






As you read this manual, you will find Information that is preceded by a symbol **NOTICE**. This information is intended to help you avoid damage to your vehicle, other property, or the environment.

Symbols    on labels attached to your vehicle are to remind you to read this owner's manual for proper and safe operation of your vehicle.

  is colour-coded to indicate "danger" (red), "warning" (orange), or "caution" (amber).

 **Safety Labels** P. 81


A Few Words About Safety

Your safety, and the safety of others, is very important. And operating this vehicle safely is an important responsibility.

To help you make informed decisions about safety, we have provided operating procedures and other information on labels and in this manual. This information alerts you to potential hazards that could hurt you or others.

Of course, it is not practical or possible to warn you about all the hazards associated with operating or maintaining your vehicle. You must use your own good judgement.

You will find this important safety information in a variety of forms, including:

- **Safety Labels** - on the vehicle.
- **Safety Messages** - preceded by a safety alert symbol  and one of three signal words: **DANGER**, **WARNING**, or **CAUTION**. These signal words mean:

 **DANGER**

You **WILL** be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.

 **WARNING**

You **CAN** be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.

  **WARNING**

You **CAN** be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.

 **CAUTION**

You **CAN** be HURT if you don't follow instructions.

- **Safety Headings** - such as Important Safety Precautions.
- **Safety Section** - such as Safe Driving.
- **Instructions** - how to use this vehicle correctly and safely.

This entire book is filled with important safety information - please read it carefully.

Event Data Recorders

Your vehicle is equipped with several devices commonly referred to as Event Data Recorders. They record various types of real time vehicle data such as SRS airbag deployment and SRS system components failure.

This data belongs to the vehicle owner and may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.

Service Diagnostic Recorders

Your vehicle is equipped with service-related devices that record information about powertrain performance and driving conditions. The data can be used to help technicians diagnose, repair and maintain the vehicle. This data may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.

This owner's manual should be considered a permanent part of the vehicle and should remain with the vehicle when it is sold.

This owner's manual covers all models of your vehicle. You may find descriptions of equipment and features that are not on your particular model.

The images throughout this owner's manual (including the front cover) that depict features, equipment, and Meter screens are only examples and may not be representative of your particular model.

The information and specifications included in this publication were in effect at the time of approval for printing. Honda Motor Co., Ltd. reserves the right, however, to discontinue or change specifications or design at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation.

Although this manual is applicable to both right-hand and left-hand drive models, the illustrations contained in this manual mainly refer to the right-hand drive models.

➤ Safe Driving P. 31

For Safe Driving P. 32

Seat Belts P. 36

Airbags P. 47

➤ Instrument Panel P. 83

Indicators P. 84

Gauges and Displays P. 100

➤ Controls P. 141

Clock P. 142

Windows P. 161

Seats P. 183

Locking and Unlocking the Doors P. 145

Interior Convenience Items P. 196

➤ Features P. 215

➤ Driving P. 217

Before Driving P. 218

Parking Your Vehicle P. 317

Towing a Trailer P. 221

Refueling P. 323

➤ Maintenance P. 329

Before Performing Maintenance P. 330

Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades P. 373

Remote Transmitter Care P. 387

Cleaning P. 391

Maintenance Schedule P. 338

Accessories and Modifications P. 397

➤ Handling the Unexpected P. 399

Tools P. 400

Overheating P. 417

If a Tyre Goes Flat P. 401

Indicator Coming On/Blinking P. 422

➤ Information P. 441

Specifications P. 442

Identification Numbers P. 445

Contents

Child Safety P. 57

Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 80

Safety Labels P. 81

Tailgate P. 157

Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel P. 163

Cooling System* P. 206

Security System P. 159

Mirrors P. 181

Climate Control System* P. 209

When Driving P. 222

Fuel Economy and CO₂ Emissions P. 326

Honda Sensing P. 249

Turbo Engine Vehicle* P. 327

Braking P. 312

Maintenance Under the Bonnet P. 345

Checking and Maintaining Tyres P. 377

Cooling System*/Climate Control System* Maintenance P. 389

Replacing Light Bulbs P. 361

Battery P. 384

Engine Does Not Start P. 409

Fuses P. 425

If the Battery Is Dead P. 412

Emergency Towing P. 439

Shift Lever Does Not Move P. 416

If You Cannot Open the Tailgate P. 440

Devices that Emit Radio Waves* P. 447

Quick Reference Guide P. 4

Safe Driving P. 31

Instrument Panel P. 83

Controls P. 141

Features P. 215

Driving P. 217

Maintenance P. 329

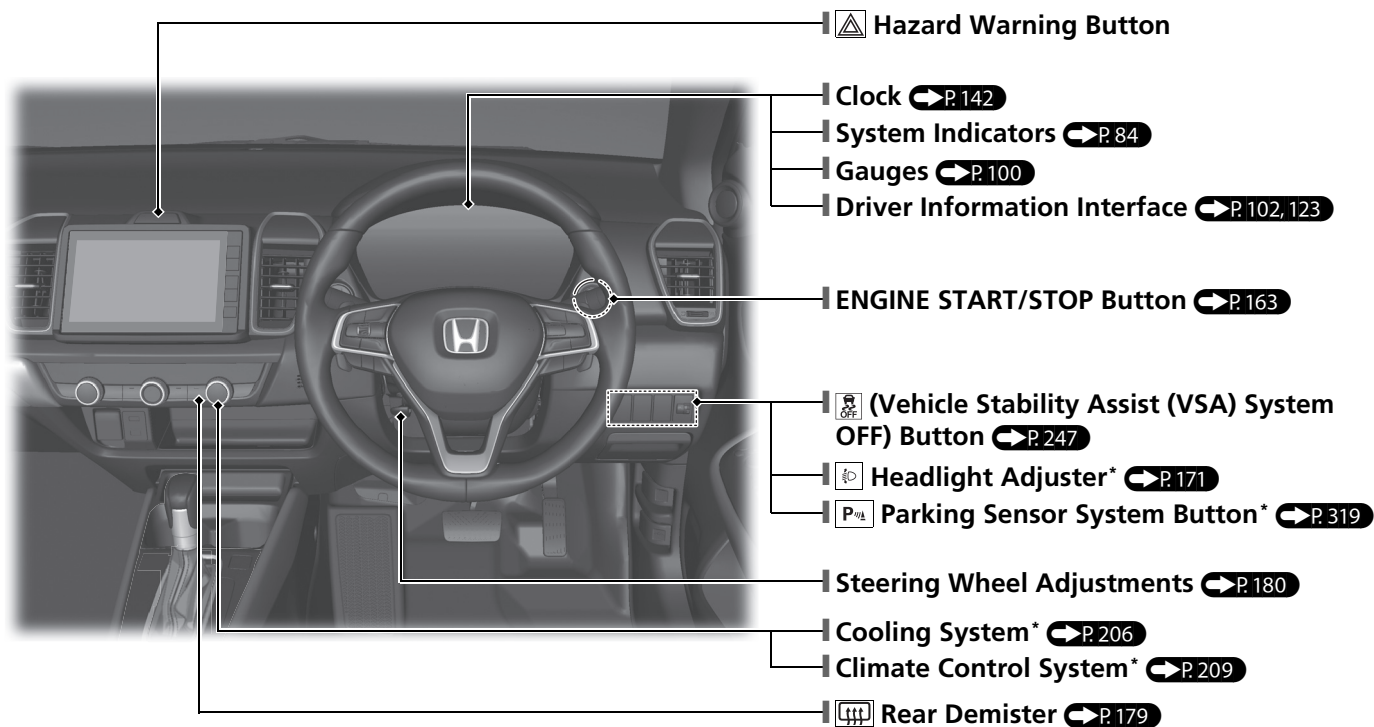
Handling the Unexpected P. 399

Information P. 441

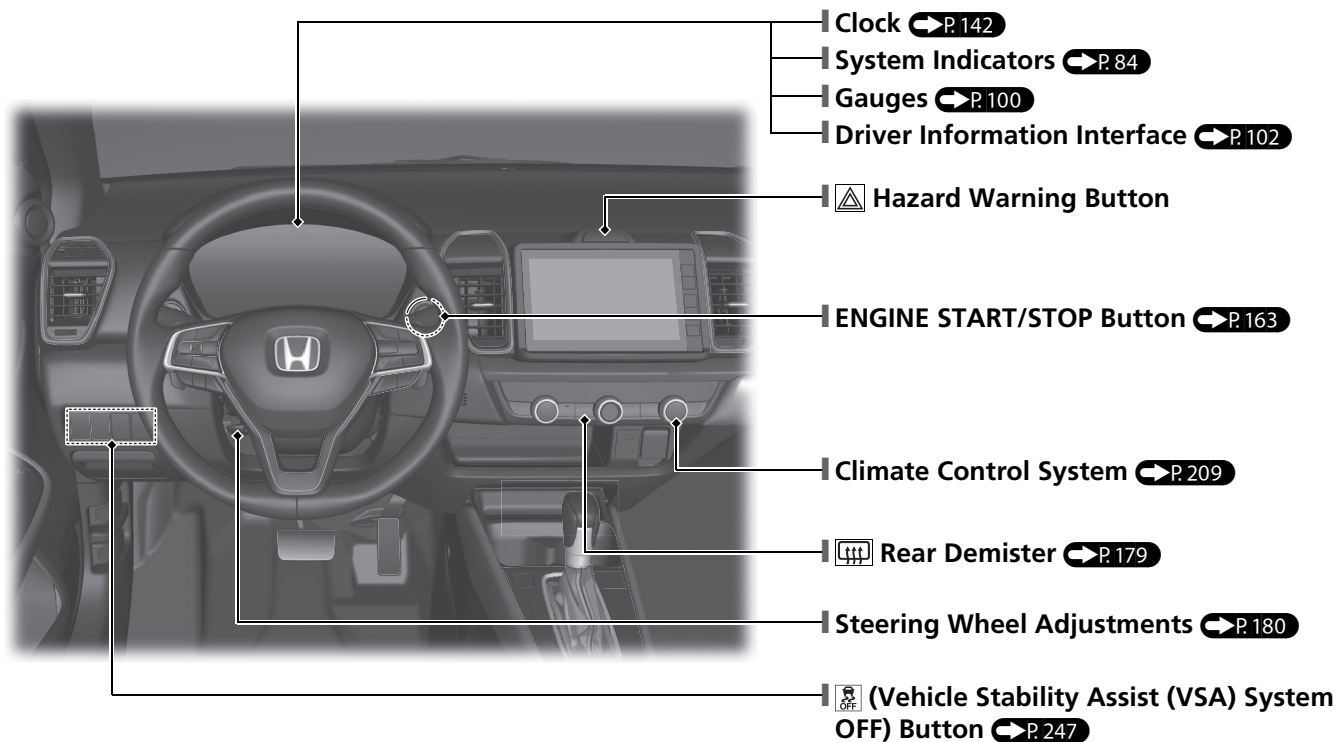
Index P. 450

Visual Index

Right-hand Drive Type



Left-hand Drive Type



Visual Index

All models

Left-hand drive models

 **Headlights/Turn Signals** ➞ P. 166, 167


 **Fog Lights** ➞ P. 170

Right-hand drive models

 **Wipers/Washers** ➞ P. 176

 **Brightness Control** ➞ P. 178

 **Paddle Shifter* (Shift Down)** ➞ P. 235

 **Paddle Shifter* (Shift Up)** ➞ P. 235

Right-hand drive models

 **Headlights/Turn Signals** ➞ P. 166, 167

 **Fog Lights*** ➞ P. 170

Left-hand drive models

 **Wipers/Washers** ➞ P. 176

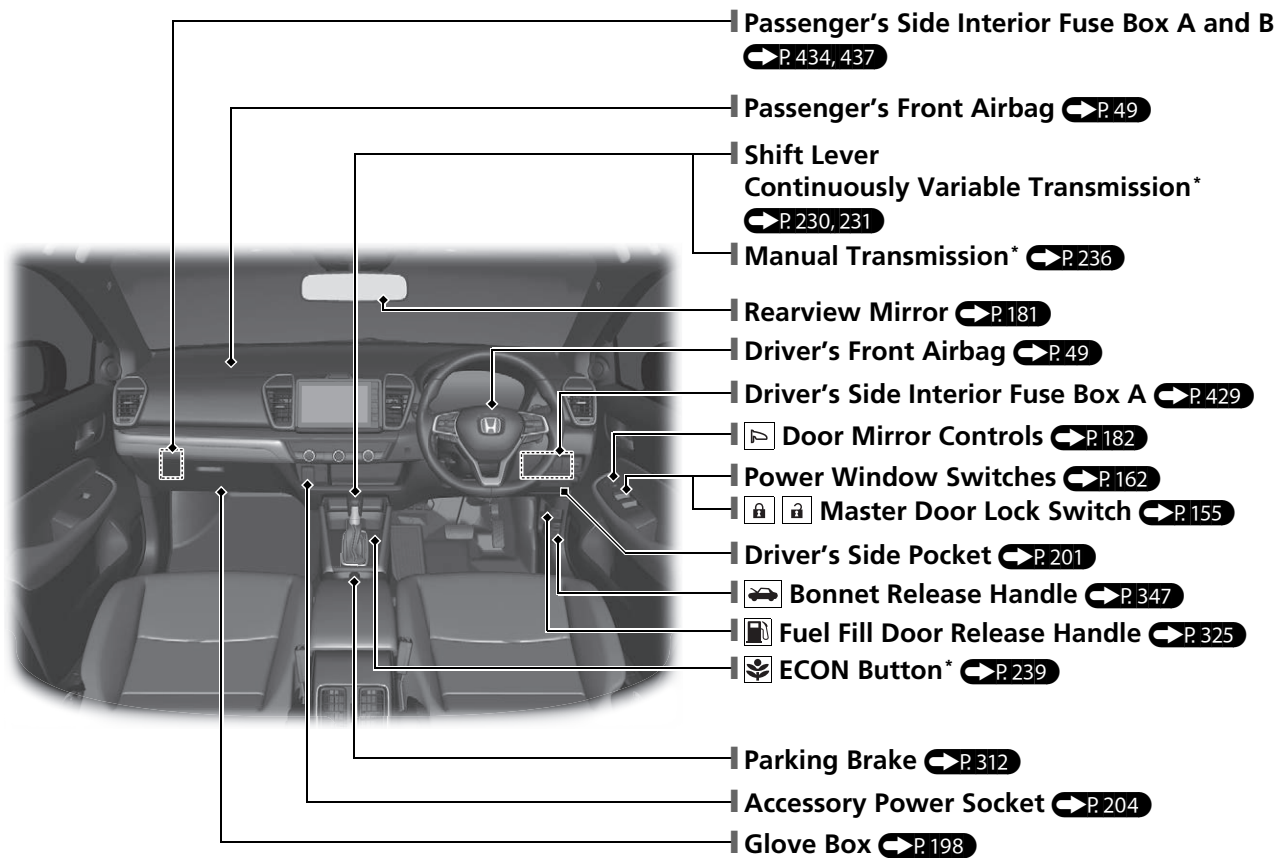
 **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Button**
➞ P. 291

 **Button** ➞ P. 273

 **Interval Button** ➞ P. 273

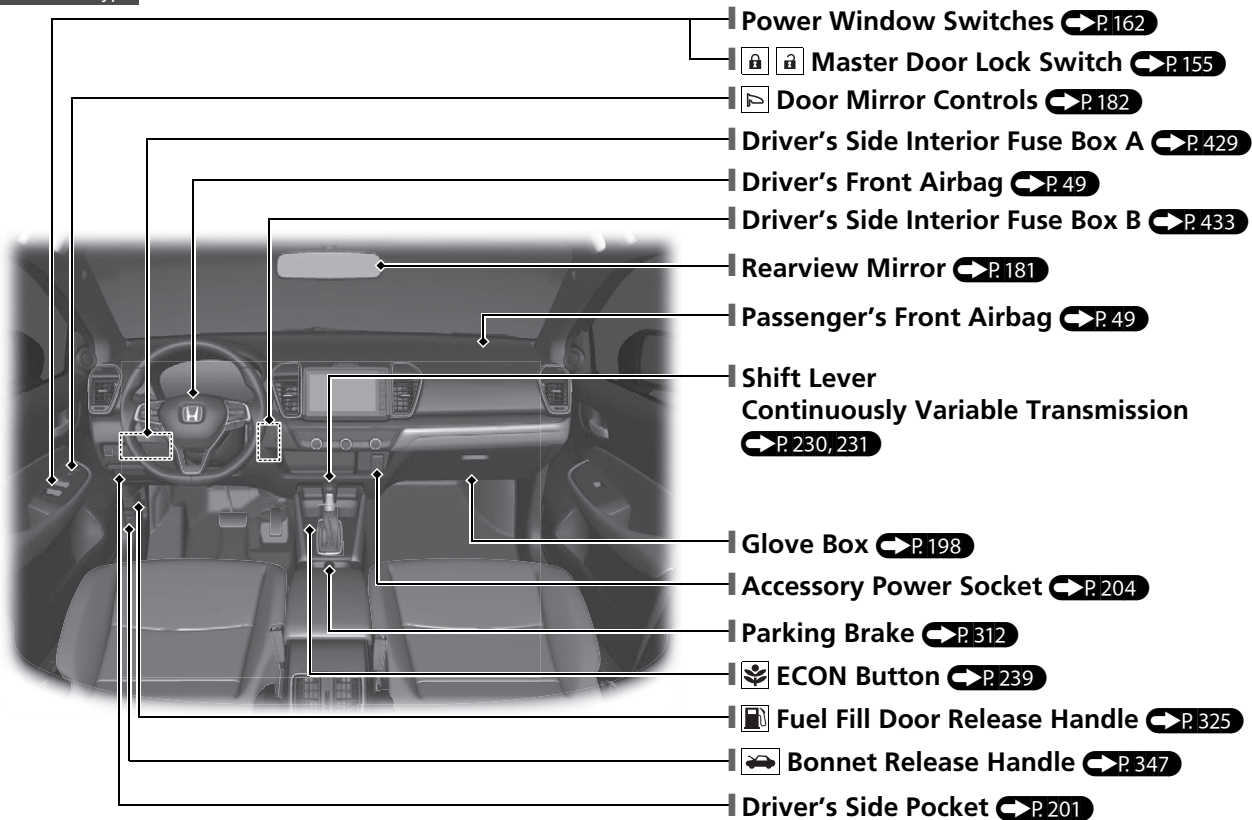
 **Horn (Press an area around )**

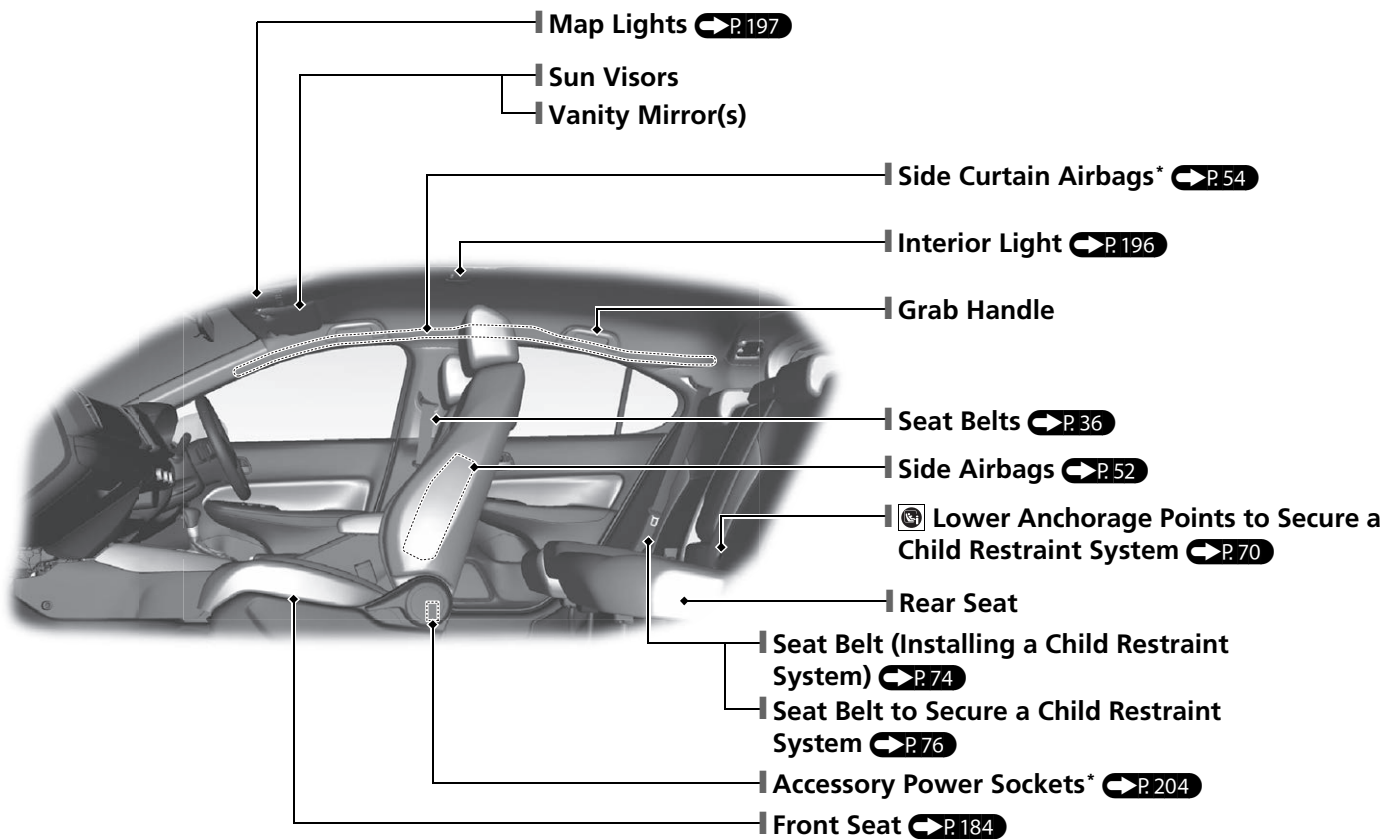
 **Left Selector Wheel** ➞ P. 102, 123



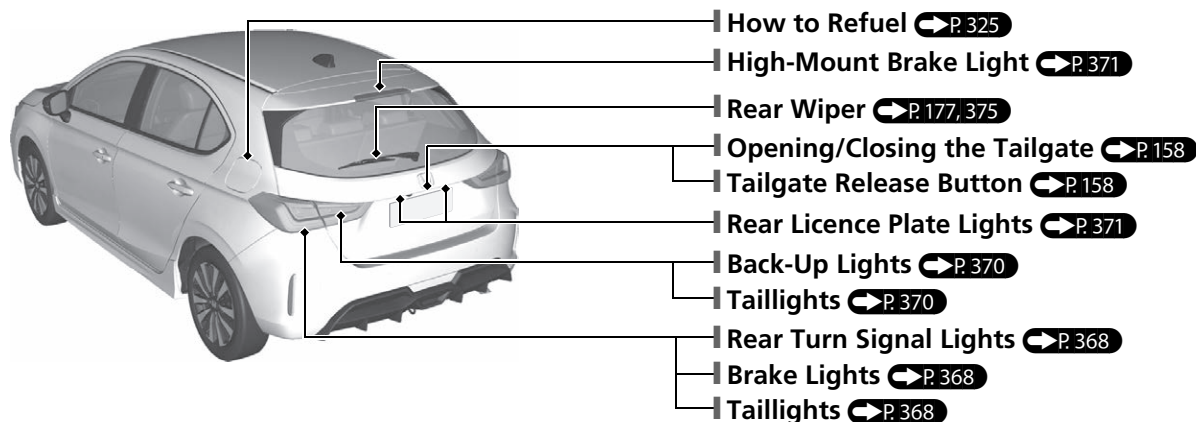
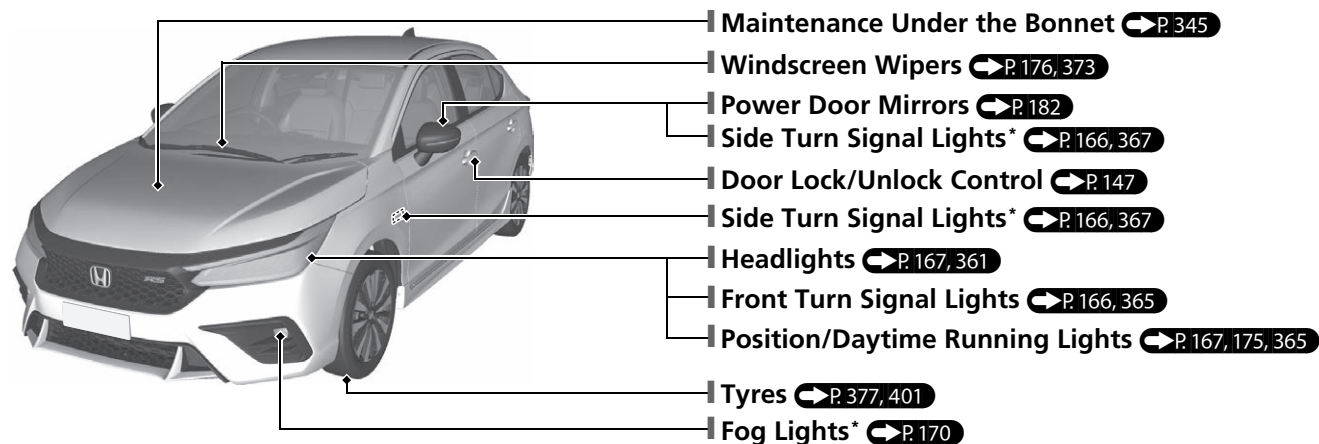
Visual Index

Left-hand Drive Type





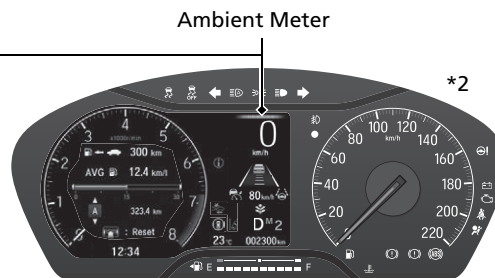
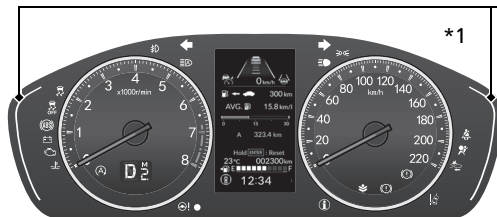
Visual Index



Eco Assist System*

Ambient Meter*

- The colour of the ambient meter changes to green to indicate that the vehicle is being driven in a fuel-efficient manner.



ECON Mode Indicator ➔ P. 94
Comes on when the ECON button is pressed.

*2



*1



ECON Button ➔ P. 239
Helps to maximise fuel economy.


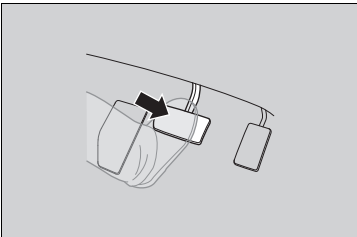
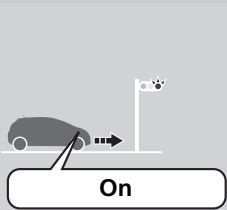

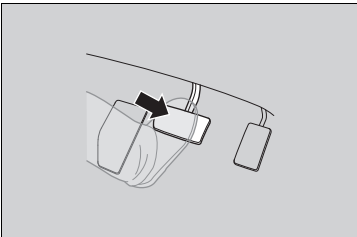
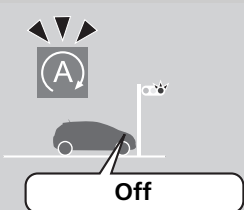
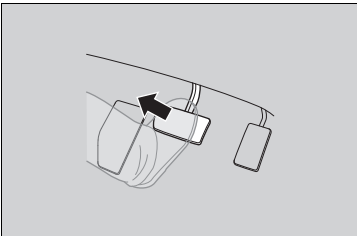
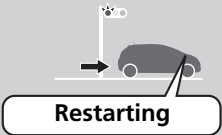
*1: Models with A-type meter

*2: Models with B-type meter

* Not available on all models

Auto Idle Stop Function*

To improve fuel economy, the engine stops and then restarts as detailed below. When Auto Idle Stop is on, the Auto Idle Stop indicator (green) comes on. ➡ P.240

At	Continuously variable transmission	Engine status
Deceleration 	 Stop the vehicle and depress the brake pedal.	 On
Stop 	 Keep the brake pedal depressed.	 Off
Start-up	 Release the brake pedal.	 Restarting

Safe Driving ➡ P. 31

Before Driving Checklist ➡ P. 35

- Before driving, check that the front seats, head restraints, steering wheel, and mirrors have been properly adjusted.

Seat Belts ➡ P. 36

- Fasten your seat belt and sit upright well back in the seat.
- Check that your passengers are wearing their seat belts correctly.



Fasten your lap belt as low as possible.

Exhaust Gas Hazard ➡ P. 80

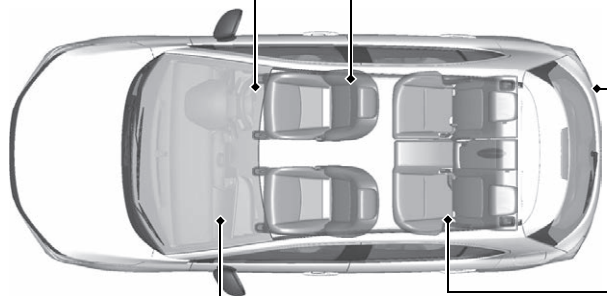
- Your vehicle emits dangerous exhaust gases that contain carbon monoxide. Do not run the engine in confined spaces where carbon monoxide gas can accumulate.

Child Safety ➡ P. 57

- All children 12 and younger should be seated in the rear seat.
- Small children should be properly restrained in a front-facing child restraint system.
- Infants must be properly restrained in a rear-facing child restraint system on a rear seat.

Airbags ➡ P. 47

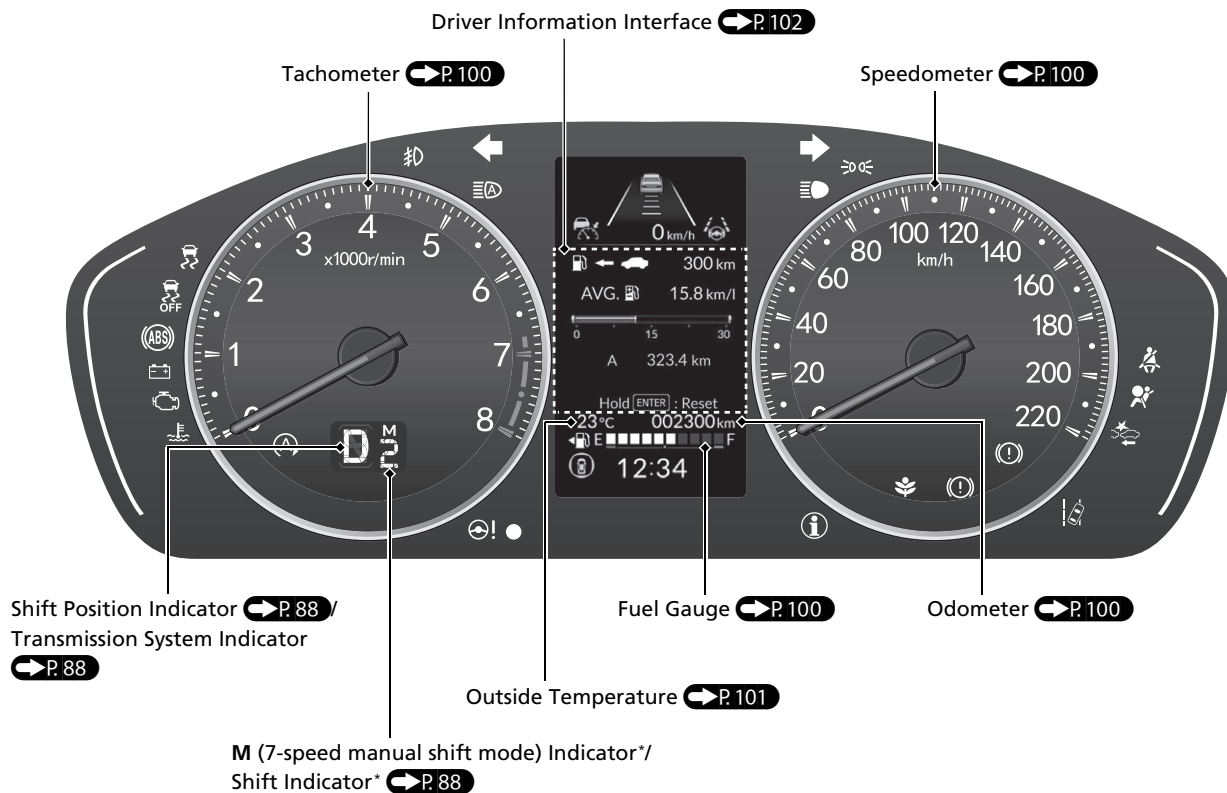
- Your vehicle is fitted with airbags to help to protect you and your passengers during a moderate-to-severe collision.



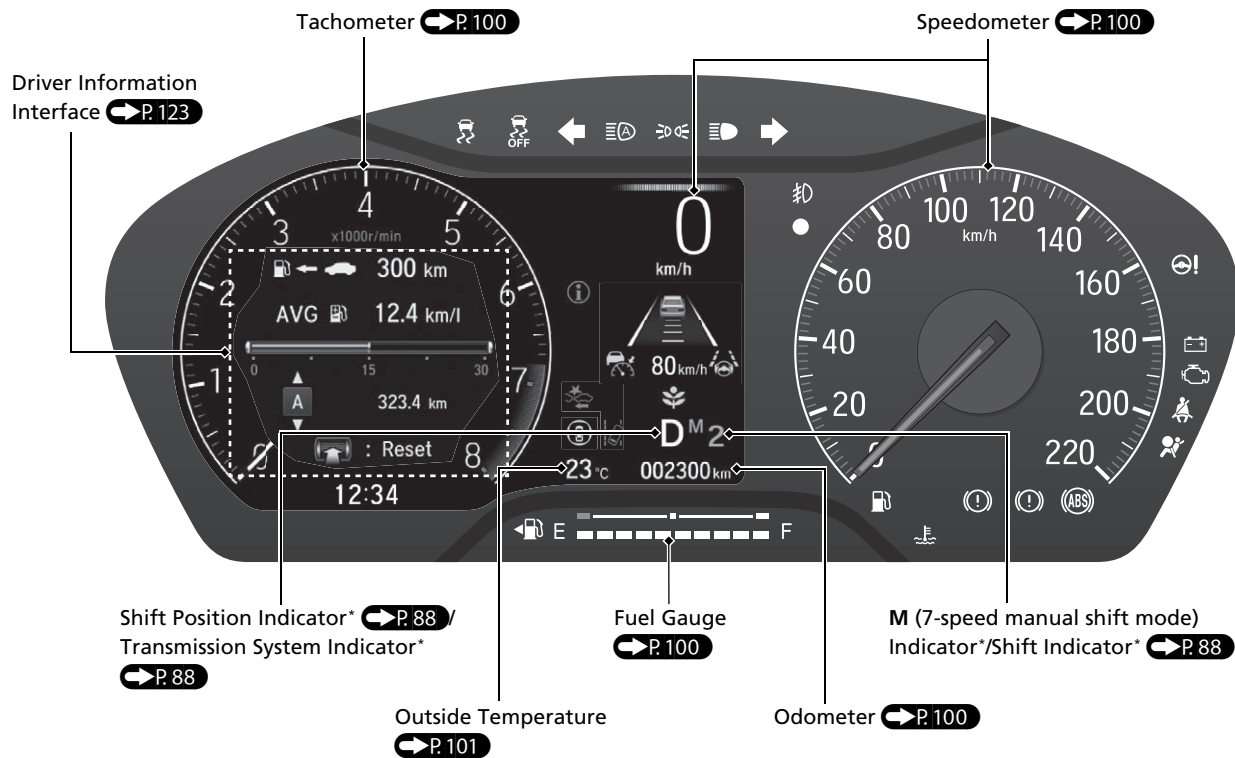
Instrument Panel ➡ P.83

Indicators ➡ P.84 / Gauges ➡ P.100 / Driver Information Interface ➡ P.102, 123

Models with A-type meter



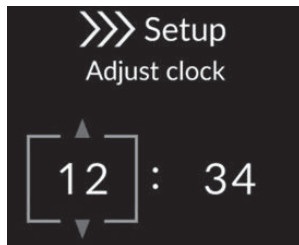
Models with B-type meter



Controls P.141

Clock P.142

Models with A-type meter



Models with B-type meter



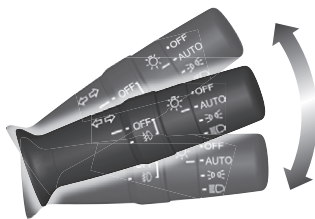
ENGINE START/STOP Button P.163

Press the button to change the vehicle's power mode.



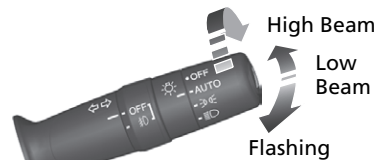
Turn Signals P.166

Turn Signal Control Lever



Lights P.167

Light Control Switches



Wipers and Washers

➡ P. 176

Wiper/Washer Control Lever

MIST

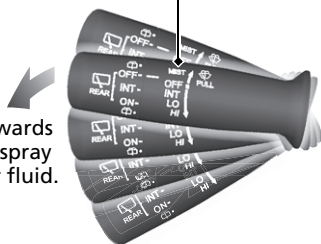
OFF

INT: Low speed with intermittent

LO: Low speed wipe

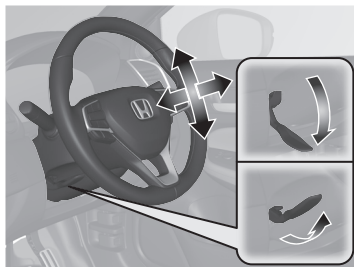
HI: High speed wipe

Pull towards you to spray washer fluid.



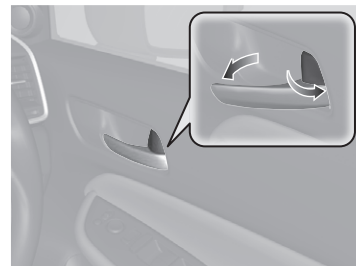
Steering Wheel ➡ P. 180

- To adjust, push the adjustment lever down, adjust to the desired position, then lock the lever back in place.



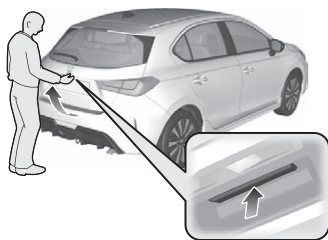
Unlocking the Driver's Door from the Inside ➡ P. 154

- Pull the driver's door inner handle to unlock and open it at the same time.



Tailgate ➡ P.157

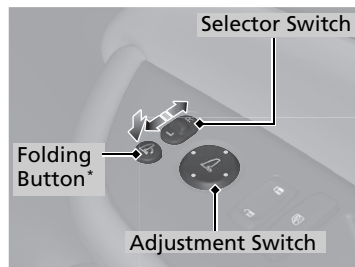
- Press the tailgate outer handle to unlock and open the tailgate when you carry the keyless remote.



Power Door Mirrors

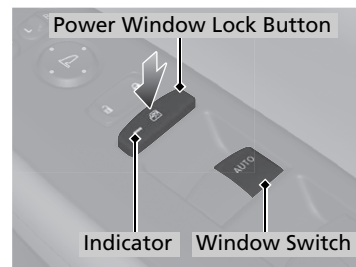
➡ P.182

- With the power mode in ON, move the selector switch to L or R.
- Push the appropriate edge of the adjustment switch to adjust the mirror.
- Press the folding button* to fold in and out the door mirrors.










Power Windows ➡ P.161


- With the power mode in ON, open and close the power windows.
- If the power window lock button is in the off position, each passenger's window can be opened and closed with its own switch.
- If the power window lock button is in the ON position (indicator on), each passenger's window switch is disabled.





Cooling System*

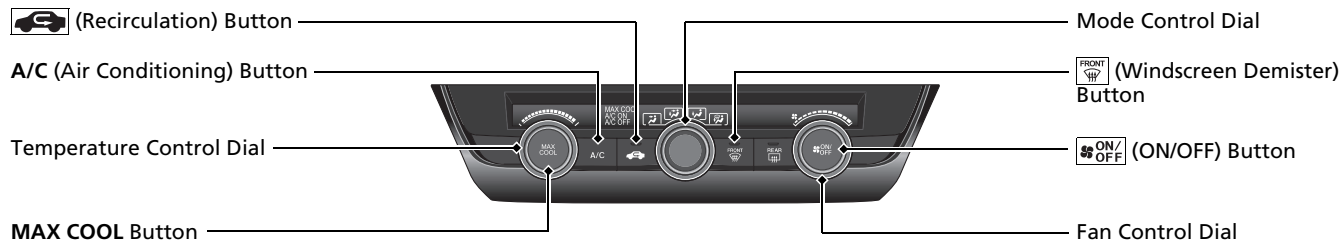
- Press the  button to turn the system on or off.
- Rotate the fan control dial to adjust the fan speed.
- Turn the mode control dial to  /  /  /  to select the vents air flows from.
- Rotate the temperature control dial to adjust the temperature.
- Press the  button to defrost the windscreen.

 Air flows from dashboard vents.



 Air flows from floor vents.


 Air flows from floor and dashboard vents.


 Air flows from floor and windscreen demister vents.




Climate Control System*

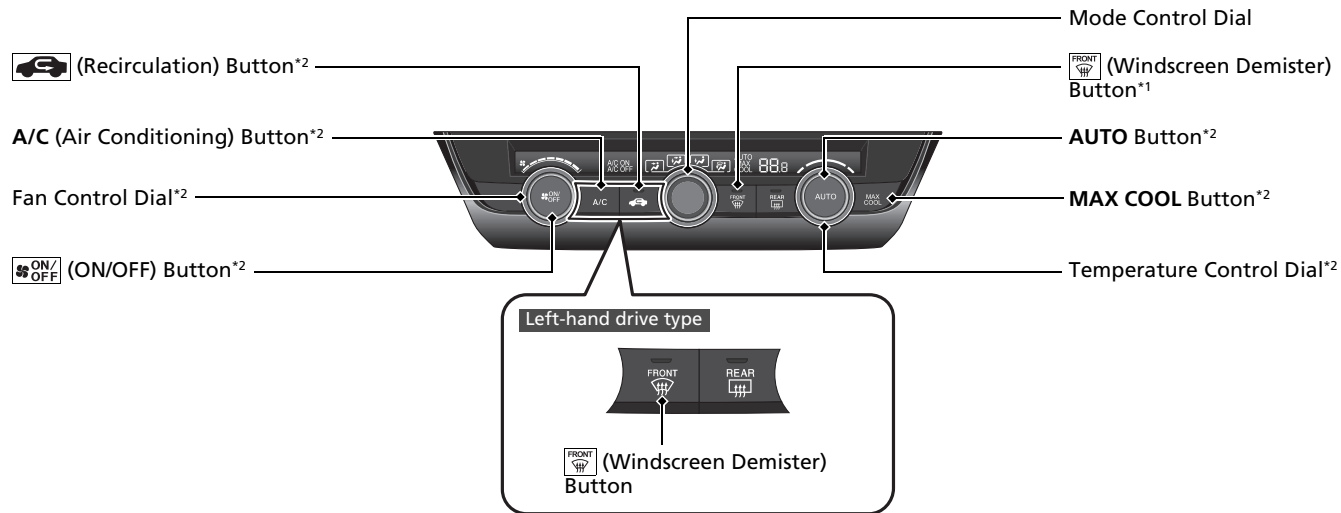
- Press the **AUTO** button to activate the climate control system.
- Press the  button to turn the system on and off.
- Press the  button to defrost the windscreen.

 Air flows from dashboard vents and back of the console compartment*.

 Air flows from floor and dashboard vents, and back of the console compartment*.

 Air flows from floor vents.

 Air flows from floor and windscreen demister vents.



*1: Right-hand drive type

*2: Right-hand drive models shown. For the left-hand drive models, these buttons are located at the symmetrically opposite to the right-hand drive model.

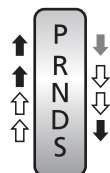
Driving P. 217




Manual Transmission* P. 236

Continuously Variable Transmission* P. 230, 231

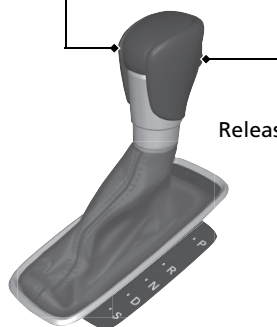
- Shift to **P** and depress the brake pedal when starting the engine.

Shifting



-  Depress the brake pedal and press the shift lever release button to shift.
-  Shift without pressing the shift lever release button.
-  Press the shift lever release button and shift.

Shift Lever



Release Button

P **Park**
Used when parking or starting the engine.

R **Reverse**
Used when reversing.

N **Neutral**
Transmission is not locked.

D **Drive**
Used:

- For normal driving

Models with paddle shifters

- When temporarily driving in the 7-speed manual shift mode

S **Drive (S)**
Used:

- For better acceleration
- To increase engine braking
- When going up or down hills

Models with paddle shifters

- When driving in the 7-speed manual shift mode

7-Speed Manual Shift Mode* ➡ P.234

- Allows you to manually shift the transmission up or down without removing your hands from the steering wheel.

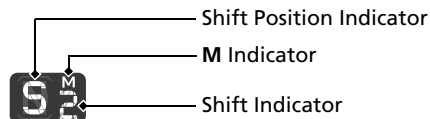
When the shift position is in **S**

- Pulling a paddle shifter changes the mode from continuously variable transmission to 7-speed manual shift mode.
- The **M** indicator and the selected speed number are displayed in the shift indicator.

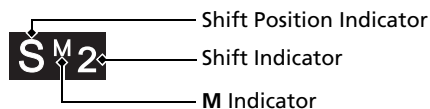
When the shift position is in **D**

- Pulling a paddle shifter temporarily changes the mode from continuously variable transmission to 7-speed manual shift mode. The selected speed number is displayed in the shift indicator.

Models with A-type meter



Models with B-type meter




Shift Down Paddle Shifter Shift Up Paddle Shifter



CMBS On and Off P.256

- When a possible frontal collision is likely unavoidable, the CMBS can help you to reduce the vehicle speed and the severity of the collision.
- The CMBS is turned on every time you start the engine.
- To turn the CMBS on or off, use the safety support of the driver information interface.

VSA On and Off P.247

- The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system helps to stabilise the vehicle during cornering and helps to maintain traction while accelerating on loose or slippery road surfaces.
- VSA comes on automatically every time you start the engine.
- To partially disable or fully restore VSA function, press and hold the  (VSA OFF) button until you hear a beep.

Refueling P.323

Fuel recommendation:

Thai models

Unleaded premium petrol/gasohol up to E20 (80% petrol and 20% ethanol), research octane number 95 or higher

Indonesian models

Unleaded petrol, research octane number 90 or higher

Except Thai and Indonesian models

Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher

Fuel tank capacity: 40 L

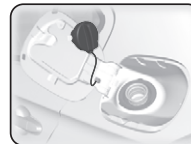
- 1** Pull on the fuel fill door release handle under the dashboard at the driver's side.



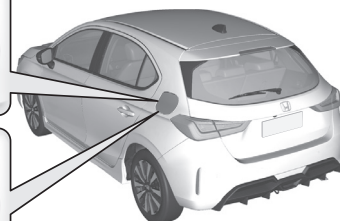
- 2** Turn the fuel fill cap slowly to remove the cap.



- 3** Place the cap in the holder on the fuel fill door.



- 4** After refueling, screw the cap back on until it clicks at least once.



Honda Sensing ➡ P.249

Assists with functions such as acceleration, braking, and steering in order to reduce the burden on the driver, as well as help avoid or reduce the severity of collisions.

Honda Sensing has the following functions.

Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

➡ P.252

The system can assist you when it determines there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead from behind, an oncoming vehicle in front, a vehicle approaching from the side, a pedestrian, or someone riding a bicycle (moving bicycle). The CMBS is designed to alert you when the potential for a collision is determined, as well as assist in reducing speed, avoiding collisions, and reducing collision severity.

Road Departure Mitigation System ➡ P.265

Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle unintentionally crossing over detected lane markings and/or leaving the roadway altogether.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) ➡ P.273

Helps to maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) ➡ P.291

Provides steering input to help to keep the vehicle in the middle of a detected lane and provides tactile, audible and visual alerts if the vehicle is detected drifting out of its lane.

Lead Car Departure Notification System

➡ P.304

Informs you with visual and audible alerts when your vehicle is stopped even though the vehicle ahead of you has started moving.

Auto High-Beam ➡ P.172

The front wide view camera detects the light sources ahead of the vehicle such as the lights of a preceding or oncoming vehicle, or street lights. When you are driving at night, the system automatically switches the headlights between low beam and high beam depending on the situation.

Parking Sensor System *

➡ P.319

The rear corner* and centre sensors monitor obstacles behind your vehicle, and the beeper and driver information interface lets you know the approximate distance between your vehicle and the obstacle.

Maintenance ➡ P. 329

Under the Bonnet ➡ P. 345

- Check engine oil, engine coolant, and windscreen washer fluid. Add when necessary.
- Check brake/clutch* fluid.
- Check the battery condition monthly.

- 1 Pull the bonnet release handle under the driver's side lower outside corner of the dashboard.



- 2 Locate the bonnet latch lever, pull it up, and then raise the bonnet. Once you have raised the bonnet slightly, you can release the lever.



- 3 When finished, close the bonnet and make sure it is firmly locked in place.

Wiper Blades ➡ P. 373

- Replace blades if they leave streaks across the windscreen or become noisy.



Tyres ➡ P. 377

- Inspect tyres and wheels regularly.
- Check tyre pressures regularly.
- Install winter tyres for winter driving.

Lights ➡ P. 361

- Inspect all lights regularly.

Handling the Unexpected ➡ P.399

Flat Tyre ➡ P.401

- Park in a safe place and replace the flat tyre with the spare tyre in the luggage area.



Engine Won't Start ➡ P.409

- If the battery is dead, jump start using a booster battery.



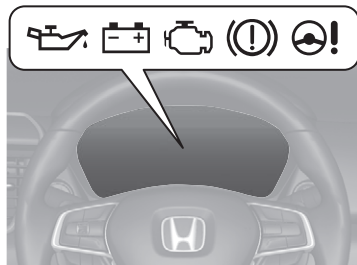
Overheating ➡ P.417

- Park in a safe location. If you do not see steam under the bonnet, open the bonnet, and let the engine cool down.



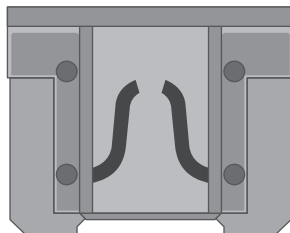
Indicators Come On ➡ P.422

- Identify the indicator and consult the owner's manual.



Blown Fuse ➡ P.425

- Check for a blown fuse if an electrical device does not operate.



Emergency Towing ➡ P.439

- Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.



What to Do If

Q The power mode does not change from **VEHICLE OFF (LOCK)** to **ACCESSORY**. Why?

- A**
- The steering wheel may be locked.
 - Move the steering wheel left and right after pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.



Q **Continuously variable transmission models**
The power mode does not change from **ACCESSORY** to **VEHICLE OFF (LOCK)**. Why?

- A** The shift lever should be moved to **P**.

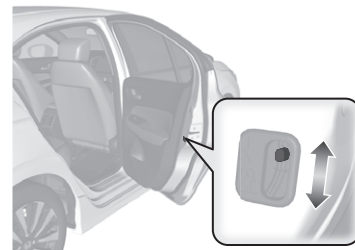


Q Why does the brake pedal pulsate slightly when applying the brakes?

- A** This can occur when the ABS activates and does not indicate a problem. Apply firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. Never pump the brake pedal.
- Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) ➡ **P. 314**

Q The rear door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle. Why?

A Check if the childproof lock is in the lock position. If so, open the rear door with the outside door handle. To cancel this function, slide the lever up to the unlock position.



Q Why do the doors lock after I unlocked the doors?

A If you do not open the doors within 30 seconds, the doors are relocked automatically for security.

Q Why does the beeper sound when I open the driver's door?

A The beeper sounds when:

- The power mode is in ACCESSORY.
- The exterior lights are left on.

Models with Auto Idle Stop

- The Auto Idle Stop is in operation.

Q Why does a beeper sound when I walk away from the vehicle after I close the door?

A The beeper sounds if you move outside the walk away auto lock operating range before the door completely closes.

☑ Locking the doors and tailgate (Walk away auto lock) ➔ P.149



Why does the beeper sound when I start driving?



The beeper sounds when:

- Driver and/or front passenger are not wearing their seat belts.
- The parking brake lever is not fully released.



Why do I hear a screeching sound when I apply the brake pedal?



The brake pads may need to be replaced. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Safe Driving

You can find many safety recommendations throughout this chapter, and throughout this manual.

For Safe Driving

Important Safety Precautions.....	32
Your Vehicle's Safety Features.....	34
Safety Checklist	35

Seat Belts

About Your Seat Belts	36
Fastening a Seat Belt	41
Seat Belt Inspection.....	45
Anchorage Points.....	46

Airbags

Airbag System Components.....	47
Types of Airbags	49

Front Airbags (SRS)	49
Side Airbags.....	52
Side Curtain Airbags*	54
Airbag System Indicators.....	55
Airbag Care	56

Child Safety

Protecting Child Passengers	57
Safety of Infants and Small Children...	61
Safety of Larger Children	77

Exhaust Gas Hazard

Carbon Monoxide Gas.....	80
--------------------------	----

Safety Labels

Label Locations	81
-----------------------	----

The following pages explain your vehicle's safety features and how to use them properly. The safety precautions below are ones that we consider to be among the most important.

Important Safety Precautions

■ Always wear your seat belt

A seat belt is your best protection in all types of collisions. Airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with airbags, make sure you and your passengers always wear your seat belts, and wear them properly.

■ Restrain all children

Children aged 12 and under should ride properly restrained in a back seat, not the front seat. Infants and small children should be restrained in a child restraint system. Larger children should use a booster seat and a lap/shoulder seat belt until they can use the belt properly without a booster seat.

■ Be aware of airbag hazards

While airbags can save lives, they can cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk. Be sure to follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

■ Don't drink and drive

Alcohol and driving don't mix. Even one drink can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions, and your reaction time gets worse with every additional drink. So don't drink and drive, and don't let your friends drink and drive, either.

» Important Safety Precautions

Some countries prohibit the use of mobile phones other than hands-free devices by the driver while driving.

■ Pay appropriate attention to the task of driving safely

Engaging in mobile phone conversation or other activities that keep you from paying close attention to the road, other vehicles, and pedestrians could lead to a crash. Remember, situations can change quickly, and only you can decide when it is safe to divert some attention away from driving.

■ Control your speed

Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

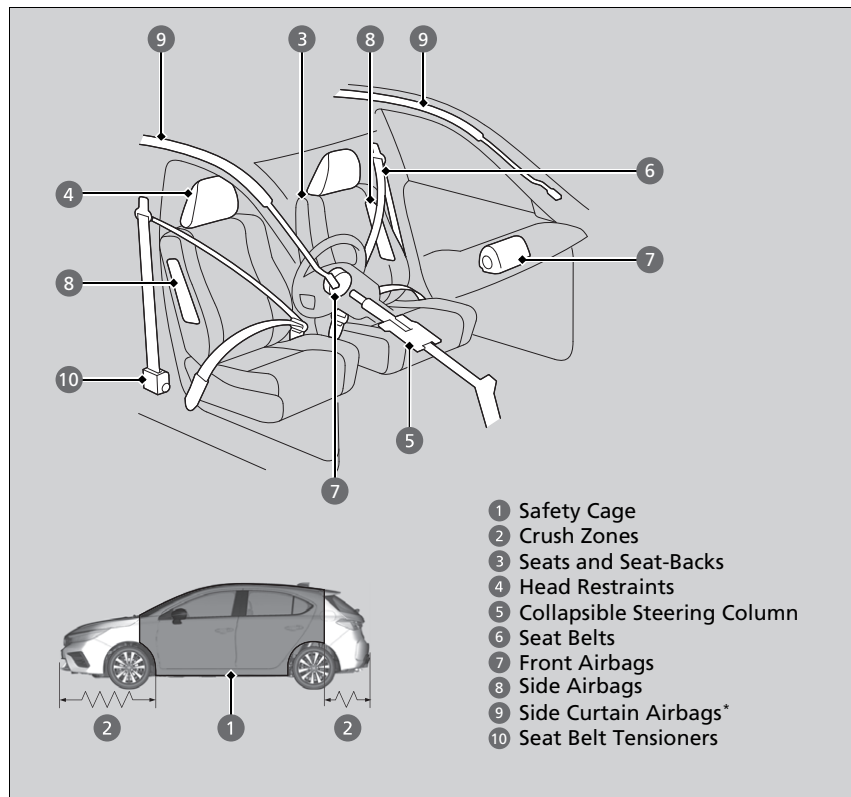
■ Keep your vehicle in safe condition

Having a tyre blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous. To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tyre pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

■ Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle

Children, pets, and people needing assistance left unattended in the vehicle may be injured if they activate one or more of the vehicle controls. They may also cause the vehicle to move, resulting in a crash in which they and/or another person(s) can be injured or killed. Also, depending on the ambient temperature, the temperature of the interior may reach extreme levels, which can result in harm or death. Even if the climate control system is on, never leave them in the vehicle unattended as the climate control system can shut off at any time.

Your Vehicle's Safety Features



- 1 Safety Cage
- 2 Crush Zones
- 3 Seats and Seat-Backs
- 4 Head Restraints
- 5 Collapsible Steering Column
- 6 Seat Belts
- 7 Front Airbags
- 8 Side Airbags
- 9 Side Curtain Airbags*
- 10 Seat Belt Tensioners

The following checklist will help you take an active role in protecting yourself and your passengers.

►► Your Vehicle's Safety Features

Your vehicle is equipped with many features that work together to help to protect you and your passengers during a crash.

Some features do not require any action on your part. These include a strong steel framework that forms a safety cage around the passenger compartment, front and rear crush zones, a collapsible steering column, and tensioners that tighten the front seat belts in a sufficient crash.

However, you and your passengers cannot take full advantage of these features unless you remain seated in the correct position and always wear your seat belts. In fact, some safety features can contribute to injuries if they are not used properly.

Safety Checklist

For the safety of you and your passengers, make a habit of checking these items each time before you drive.

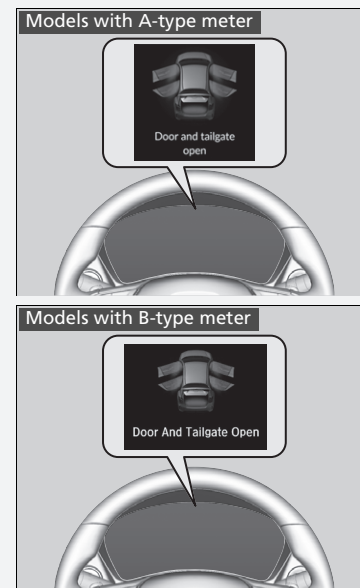
- Adjust your seat to a position suitable for driving. Be sure the front seats are adjusted as far to the rear as possible while allowing the driver to control the vehicle. Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious or fatal injury in a crash.
➤ Seats P. 183
- Adjust head restraints to the proper position. Head restraints are most effective when the centre of the head restraint aligns with the centre of your head. Taller persons should adjust their head restraint to the highest position.
➤ Adjusting the Front Head Restraint Positions P. 192
- Always wear your seat belt, and make sure you wear it properly. Confirm that any passengers are properly belted as well.
➤ Fastening a Seat Belt P. 41
- Protect children by using seat belts or child restraint systems according to a child's age, height, and weight.
➤ Child Safety P. 57

▶ Safety Checklist

If the door and/or tailgate open message appears on the driver information interface, a door and/or the tailgate is not completely closed. Close all doors and the tailgate tightly until the message disappears.

➤ Driver Information Interface (A-type meter) P. 102

➤ Driver Information Interface (B-type Meter) P. 123



About Your Seat Belts

Seat belts are the single most effective safety device because they keep you connected to the vehicle so that you can take advantage of many built-in safety features. They also help to keep you from being thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against any passengers, or out of the vehicle. When worn properly, seat belts also keep your body properly positioned in a crash so that you can take full advantage of the additional protection provided by the airbags.

In addition, seat belts help to protect you in almost every type of crash, including:

- frontal impacts
- side impacts
- rear impacts
- rollovers

About Your Seat Belts

WARNING

Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even though your vehicle has airbags.

Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts and wear them properly.

WARNING: Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

WARNING: Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

WARNING: Belts should not be worn with straps twisted.

WARNING: Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

■ Lap/shoulder seat belts

All five seating positions are equipped with lap/shoulder seat belts with emergency locking retractors. In normal driving the retractor lets you move freely while keeping some tension on the belt. During a collision or sudden stop the retractor locks to restrain your body.

The seat belt must be properly secured when using a front-facing child restraint system.

✎ **Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt** P. 74

■ Proper use of seat belts

Follow these guidelines for proper use:

- All occupants should sit upright, well back in the seat, and remain in that position for the duration of the trip. Slouching and leaning reduce the effectiveness of the belt and can increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.
- Never place the shoulder part of a lap/shoulder seat belt under your arm or behind your back. This could cause very serious injuries in a crash.
- Two people should never use the same seat belt. If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Do not put any accessories on the seat belts. Devices intended to improve comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt can reduce the protective capability and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.

✎ About Your Seat Belts

If you extend the seat belt too quickly, it will lock in place. If this happens, slightly retract the seat belt, then extend it slowly.

Seat belts cannot completely protect you in every crash. But in most cases, seat belts can reduce your risk of serious injury.

Most countries require you to wear seat belts. Take time to familiarise with the legal requirements of the countries in which you will drive.

■ Seat Belt Reminder

Models with A-type meter



Models with B-type meter



■ Front seats

The seat belt system includes an indicator on the instrument panel to remind the driver or a front passenger or both to fasten their seat belts.

If you set the power mode to ON before the driver's seat belt is fastened, the indicator will come on. If the driver does not fasten the belt, the indicator will remain on.

When the vehicle is moving, the beeper will sound and the indicator will blink for a while until the seat belt is fastened.

Then, the beeper will stop and the indicator will stay on.

▶▶ Seat Belt Reminder

The indicator will also come on if a front passenger does not fasten their seat belt within six seconds after the power mode is set to ON.

When no one is sitting in the front passenger's seat, the indicator will not come on and the beeper will not sound.

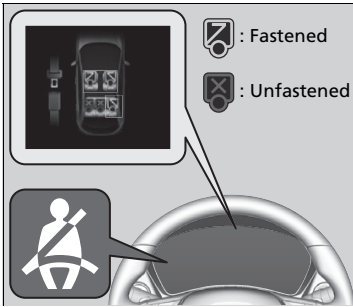
If the indicator comes on or the beeper sounds with no one sitting in the front passenger's seat. Check if:

- There is nothing heavy placed on the front passenger seat.
- The driver's seat belt is fastened.

If the indicator does not light when the passenger is seated and is not fastened, something may be interfering with the occupant detection sensor. Check if:

- A cushion is placed on the seat.
- The front passenger is not sitting properly.

If none of these conditions exist, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.



■ Rear seats*

Your vehicle monitors rear seat belt use. The driver information interface notifies you if any of the rear seat belts are not used.

The display appears when:

- Any of the rear passenger seat belts are unfastened when the power mode is set to ON.
- A rear door is opened and then closed.
- Any of the rear passengers fasten or unfasten their seat belt.

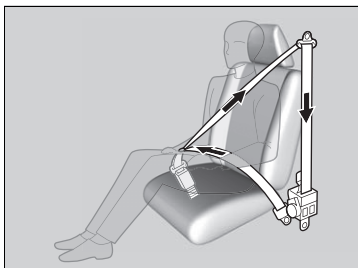
The seat belt reminder indicator blinks and the beeper sounds if any rear passenger seat belts are unfastened while driving.

* Not available on all models

■ Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

The front seats are equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners to enhance safety.

The tensioners automatically tighten the front seat belts during a moderate-to-severe frontal collision, sometimes even if the collision is not severe enough to inflate the front airbags.



►► Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

The seat belt tensioners can only operate once. If a tensioner is activated, the SRS indicator will come on. Have a dealer replace the tensioner and thoroughly inspect the seat belt system as it may not offer protection in a subsequent crash.

Models with side curtain airbags

During a moderate-to-severe side impact, the tensioners on both sides of the vehicle also activate.

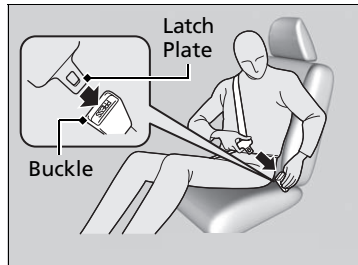
Fastening a Seat Belt

After adjusting a front seat to the proper position, and while sitting upright and well back in the seat:

► **Seats** P. 183



1. Pull the seat belt out slowly.



2. Insert the latch plate into the buckle, then tug on the belt to make sure the buckle is secure.

► Make sure that the belt is not twisted or caught on anything.

►► Fastening a Seat Belt

No one should sit in a seat with an inoperative seat belt or one that does not appear to be working correctly. Using a seat belt that is not working properly may not protect the occupant in a crash. Have a dealer check the belt as soon as possible.

Never insert any foreign objects into the buckle or retractor mechanism.

If the seat belt appears to be locked in a fully retracted position, firmly pull out on the shoulder belt once, then push it back in.

Then smoothly pull it out of the retractor and fasten. If you are unable to release the seat belt from a fully retracted position, do not allow anyone to sit in the seat, and take your vehicle to a dealer for repair.

► **About Your Seat Belts** P. 36

► **Seat Belt Inspection** P. 45



3. Position the lap part of the belt as low as possible across your hips, then pull up on the shoulder part of the belt so the lap part fits snugly. This lets your strong pelvic bones take the force of a crash and reduces the chance of internal injuries.
4. If necessary, pull up on the belt again to remove any slack, then check that the belt rests across the centre of your chest and over your shoulder. This spreads the forces of a crash over the strongest bones in your upper body.

► Fastening a Seat Belt

⚠ WARNING

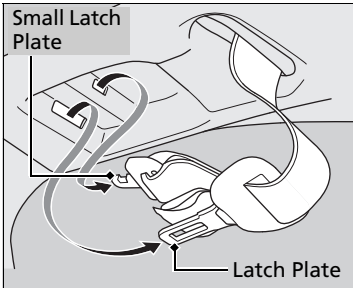
Improperly positioning the seat belts can cause serious injury or death in a crash.

Make sure all seat belts are properly positioned before driving.

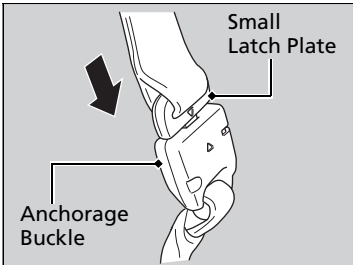
To release the belt, push the red **PRESS** button and then guide the belt by hand until it has retracted completely.

When exiting the vehicle, be sure the belt is properly stowed so that it will not get caught in the closing door.

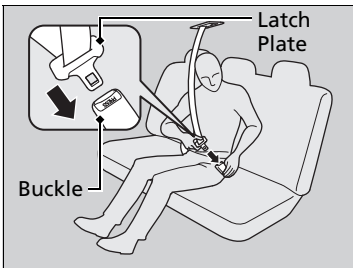
Seat Belt with Detachable Anchorage



1. Pull out the seat belt's small latch plate and the latch plate from each holding slot in the ceiling.



2. Line up the triangle marks on the small latch plate and anchorage buckle. Make sure the seat belt is not twisted. Attach the belt to the anchorage buckle.



3. Insert the latch plate into the buckle. Properly fasten the seat belt the same way you fasten the lap/shoulder seat belt.

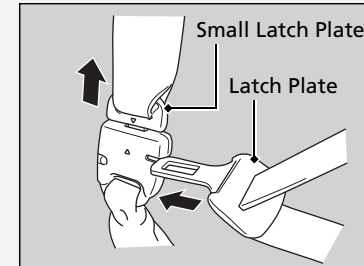
Seat Belt with Detachable Anchorage

⚠ WARNING

Using the seat belt with the detachable anchorage unfastened increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash.

Before using the seat belt, make sure the detachable anchorage is correctly latched.

To unlatch the detachable anchorage, insert the latch plate into the slot on the side of the anchorage buckle.



Continued

■ Advice for Pregnant Women

If you are pregnant, the best way to protect yourself and your unborn child when driving or riding in a vehicle is to always wear a seat belt. When positioning the seat belt, wear the shoulder belt section across the chest, avoiding the abdomen, and keep the lap belt portion as low as possible across the hips.



► Advice for Pregnant Women

Each time you have a checkup, ask your doctor if it is okay for you to drive.

To reduce the risk of injuries to both you and your unborn child that can be caused by an inflating front airbag:

- When driving, sit upright and adjust the seat as far back as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle.
- When sitting in the front passenger's seat, adjust the seat as far back as possible.

Seat Belt Inspection

Regularly check the condition of your seat belts as follows:

- Pull each belt out fully, and look for frays, cuts, burns, and wear.
- Check that the latch plates and buckles work smoothly and the belts retract easily.
 - ▶ If a belt does not retract easily, cleaning the belt may correct the problem. Only use a mild soap and warm water. Do not use bleach or cleaning solvents. Make sure the belt is completely dry before allowing it to retract.

Any belt that is not in good condition or working properly will not provide proper protection and should be replaced as soon as possible.

A belt that has been worn during a crash may not provide the same level of protection in a subsequent crash. Have your seat belts inspected by a dealer after any collision.

▶▶ Seat Belt Inspection

⚠ WARNING

Not checking or maintaining seat belts can result in serious injury or death if the seat belts do not work properly when needed.

Check your seat belts regularly and have any problem corrected as soon as possible.

WARNING: No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

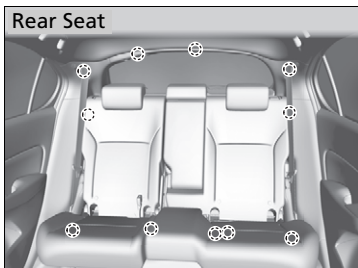
WARNING: It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.

WARNING: Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.

Anchorage Points



When replacing the seat belts, use the anchorage points shown in the images. The front seat has a lap/shoulder belt.



The rear seat has three lap/shoulder belts.

Airbag System Components

The front, side, and side curtain* airbags are deployed according to the direction and severity of impact. The airbag system includes:

- Two SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) front airbags. The driver's airbag is stored in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is stored in the dashboard. Both are marked **SRS**

AIRBAG.

- Two side airbags. One for the driver and one for the front passenger. The airbags are stored in the outer edges of the seat-backs. Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG.**

Models with side curtain airbags

- Two side curtain airbags, one for each side of the vehicle. The airbags are stored in the ceiling, above the side windows. The front and rear pillars are marked **SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG.**

- An electronic control unit that, when the power mode is in ON, continually monitors information about the various impact sensors, seat and buckle sensors, airbag activators, seat belt tensioners, and other vehicle information. During a crash event, the unit can record such information.
- Automatic front seat belt tensioners.
- Impact sensors that can detect a moderate-to-severe front or side impact.
- An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you to a possible problem with your airbag system or seat belt tensioners.

* Not available on all models

■ Important Facts About Your Airbags

Airbags can pose serious hazards. To do their job, airbags must inflate with tremendous force. So, while airbags help to save lives, they can cause burns, bruises, and other minor injuries, sometimes even fatal ones if occupants are not wearing their seat belts properly and sitting correctly.

What you should do: Always wear your seat belt properly and sit upright and as far back from the steering wheel as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle. A front passenger should move their seat as far back from the dashboard as possible.

Remember, however, that no safety system can prevent all injuries or deaths that can occur in a severe crash, even when seat belts are properly worn and the airbags deploy.

Do not place hard or sharp objects between yourself and a front airbag.

Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap, or driving with a pipe or other sharp object in your mouth, can result in injuries if your front airbag inflates.

Do not attach or place objects on the front airbag covers. Objects on the covers marked **SRS AIRBAG** could interfere with the proper operation of the airbags or be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone if the airbags inflate.

► Important Facts About Your Airbags

Do not attempt to deactivate your airbags. Together, airbags and seat belts provide the best protection.

When driving, keep hands and arms out of the deployment path of the front airbag by holding each side of the steering wheel. Do not cross an arm over the airbag cover.

Types of Airbags

Your vehicle is equipped with three types of airbags:

- **Front airbags:** Airbags in front of the driver's and front passenger's seats.
- **Side airbags:** Airbags in the driver's and front passenger's seat-backs.
- **Side curtain airbags*:** Airbags above the side windows.

Each is discussed in the following pages.

Front Airbags (SRS)

The front SRS airbags inflate in a moderate-to-severe frontal collision to help to protect the head and chest of the driver and/or front passenger.

SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) indicates that the airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. Seat belts are the occupant's primary restraint system.

Housing Locations

The front airbags are housed in the centre of the steering wheel for the driver, and in the dashboard for the front passenger. Both airbags are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

Types of Airbags

The airbags can inflate whenever the power mode is in ON.

After an airbag inflates in a crash, you may see a small amount of smoke. This is from the combustion process of the inflator material and is not harmful. People with respiratory problems may experience some temporary discomfort. If this occurs, get out of the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

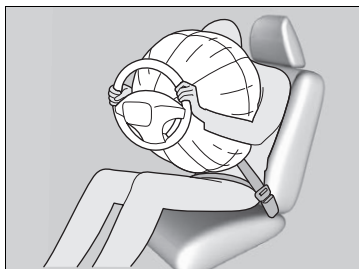
* Not available on all models

■ Operation

Front airbags are designed to inflate during moderate-to-severe frontal collisions. When the vehicle decelerates suddenly, the sensors send information to the control unit which signals one or both front airbags to inflate.

A frontal collision can be either head-on or angled between two vehicles, or when a vehicle crashes into a stationary object, such as a concrete wall.

■ How the Front Airbags Work



While your seat belt restrains your torso, the front airbag provides supplemental protection for your head and chest.

The front airbags deflate immediately so that they won't interfere with the driver's visibility or the ability to steer or operate other controls.

The total time for inflation and deflation is so fast that most occupants are not aware that the airbags deployed until they see them lying in front of them.

■ When front airbags should not deploy

Minor frontal crashes: Front airbags were designed to supplement seat belts and help to save lives, not to prevent minor scrapes, or even broken bones that might occur during a less than moderate-to-severe frontal crash.

Side impacts: Front airbags can provide protection when a sudden deceleration causes a driver or front passenger to move towards the front of the vehicle. Side airbags and side curtain airbags* have been specifically designed to help to reduce the severity of injuries that can occur during a moderate-to-severe side impact which can cause the driver or passenger to move towards the side of the vehicle.

Rear impacts: Head restraints and seat belts are your best protection during a rear impact. Front airbags cannot provide any significant protection and are not designed to deploy in such collisions.

Rollovers: Seat belts and side curtain airbags* offer the best protection in a rollover. Because front airbags could provide little if any protection, they are not designed to deploy during a rollover.

■ When front airbags deploy with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden deceleration, a strong impact to the vehicle framework or suspension might cause one or more of the airbags to deploy. Examples include running into a curb, the edge of a hole, or other low fixed object that causes a sudden deceleration in the vehicle chassis. Since the impact is underneath the vehicle, damage may not be readily apparent.

■ When front airbags may not deploy, even though exterior damage appears severe

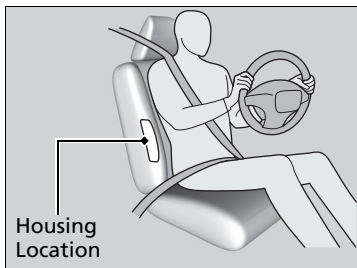
Since crushable body parts absorb crash energy during an impact, the amount of visible damage does not always indicate proper airbag operation. In fact, some collisions can result in severe damage but no airbag deployment because the airbags would not have been needed or would not have provided protection even if they had deployed.

* Not available on all models

Side Airbags

The side airbags help to protect the torso and pelvis of the driver or a front passenger during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

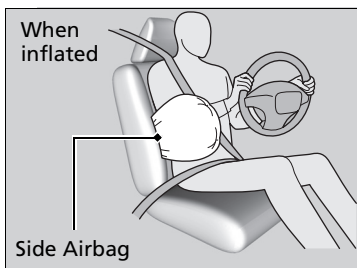
Housing Locations



The side airbags are housed in the outside edge of the driver's and passenger's seat-backs.

Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.

Operation



When the sensors detect a moderate-to-severe side impact, the control unit signals the side airbag on the impact side to immediately inflate.

Side Airbags

Do not attach accessories on or near the side airbags. They can interfere with the proper operation of the airbags, or hurt someone if an airbag inflates.

Do not cover or replace the front seat-back covers without consulting a dealer. Improperly replacing or covering front seat-back covers can prevent your side airbags from properly deploying during a side impact.

Do not let the front passenger lean sideways with their head in the deployment path of the side airbag. An inflating side airbag can strike with strong force and seriously injure the passenger.

■ When a side airbag deploys with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden acceleration, a strong impact to the side of the vehicle's framework can cause a side airbag to deploy. In such cases, there may be little or no damage, but the side impact sensors detected a severe enough impact to deploy the airbag.

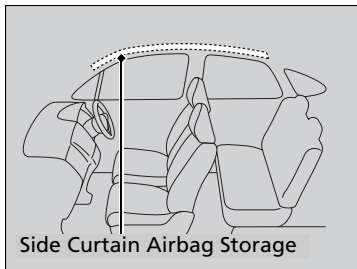
■ When a side airbag may not deploy, even though visible damage appears severe

It is possible for a side airbag not to deploy during an impact that results in apparently severe damage. This can occur when the point of impact was towards the far front or rear of the vehicle, or when the vehicle's crushable body parts absorbed most of the crash energy. In either case, the side airbag would not have been needed nor provided protection even if it had deployed.

Side Curtain Airbags*

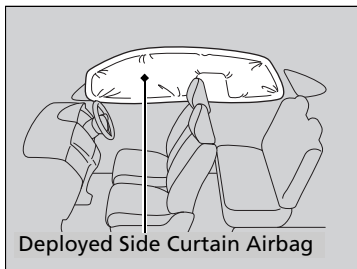
The side curtain airbags help to protect the heads of the driver and passengers in outer seating positions during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

Housing Locations



The side curtain airbags are located in the ceiling above the side windows on both sides of the vehicle.

Operation



The side curtain airbag is designed to deploy in a moderate-to-severe side impact.

■ When side curtain airbags deploy in a frontal collision

One or both side curtain airbags may also inflate in a moderate-to-severe angled frontal collision.

►► Side Curtain Airbags*

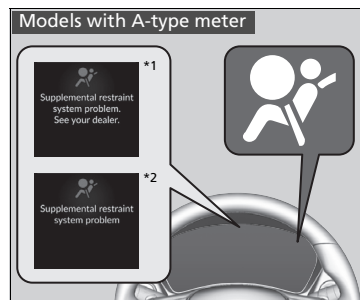
The side curtain airbags are most effective when an occupant is wearing their seat belt properly and sitting upright, well back in their seat.

Do not attach any objects to the side windows or roof pillars as they can interfere with the proper operation of the side curtain airbags.

Airbag System Indicators

If a problem occurs in the airbag system, the SRS indicator will come on and a message appears on the driver information interface.

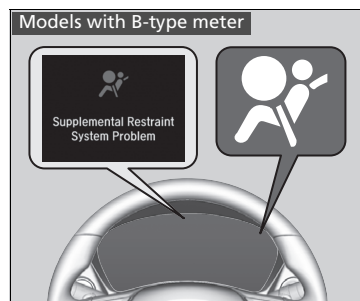
■ Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator



■ When the power mode is set to ON

The indicator comes on for a few seconds, then goes off. This tells you the system is working properly.

If the indicator comes on at any other time, or does not come on at all, have the system checked by a dealer as soon as possible. If you don't, your airbags and seat belt tensioners may not work properly when they are needed.



*1: Philippines and Laotian models

*2: Models for other countries

▶▶ Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator

⚠ WARNING

Ignoring the SRS indicator can result in serious injury or death if the airbag systems or tensioners do not work properly.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible if the SRS indicator alerts you to a possible problem.

Airbag Care

You do not need to, and should not, perform any maintenance on or replace any airbag system components yourself. However, you should have your vehicle inspected by a dealer in the following situations:

■ When the airbags have deployed

If an airbag has inflated, the control unit and other related parts must be replaced. Similarly, once an automatic seat belt tensioner has been activated, it must be replaced.

■ When the vehicle has been in a moderate-to-severe collision

Even if the airbags did not inflate, have your dealer inspect the following: front seat belt tensioners, and each seat belt that was worn during the crash.

» Airbag Care

The removal of airbag components from the vehicle is prohibited.

In case of malfunction, or shutdown, or after the airbag inflation/seat belt tensioner operation, ask a qualified personnel for handling.

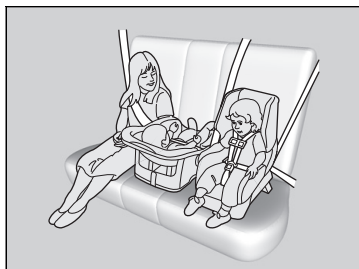
We recommend against the use of salvaged airbag system components, including the airbag, tensioners, sensors, and control unit.

Protecting Child Passengers

Each year, many children are injured or killed in vehicle crashes because they are either unrestrained or not properly restrained. In fact, vehicle crashes are the number one cause of death of children aged 12 and under.

To reduce the number of child deaths and injuries, infants and children should be properly restrained when they ride in a vehicle.

Children should sit properly restrained in a rear seat. This is because:



- An inflating front airbag can injure or kill a child sitting in the front seat.
- A child in the front seat is more likely to interfere with the driver's ability to safely control the vehicle.
- Statistics show that children of all sizes and ages are safer when they are properly restrained in a rear seat.

Protecting Child Passengers

⚠ WARNING

Children who are unrestrained or improperly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash.

Any child too small for a seat belt should be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system. A larger child should be properly restrained with a seat belt, using a booster seat if necessary.

In many countries, the law requires all children aged 12 and under, and whose height are shorter than 150 cm be properly restrained in a rear seat.

In many countries, it is required to use an officially approved and suitable child restraint system for transporting a child on any passenger seat. Check your local legal requirement.

We recommend a child restraint system compliant with UN Regulation No. 44 or No. 129, or the regulations of the subject countries.

➡ **Selecting a Child Restraint System** P. 64

- Never hold a child on your lap because it is impossible to protect them in the event of a collision.
- Never put a seat belt over yourself and a child. During a crash, the belt would likely press deep into the child and cause serious or fatal injuries.
- Never let two children use the same seat belt. Both children could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Any child who is too small to wear a seat belt must be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system that is properly secured to the vehicle using the seat belt or the child restraint anchorage system.

► Protecting Child Passengers

Front Passenger's Sun Visor

⚠ WARNING



NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

- Do not allow children to operate the doors, windows, or seat adjustments.
- Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended, especially in hot weather when the inside of the vehicle can get hot enough to kill them. They could also activate vehicle controls causing it to move unexpectedly.

►► Protecting Child Passengers

Malaysian models

Front Passenger's Doorjamb

⚠ WARNING



Extreme Hazard!

DO NOT use a rear-facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!

WARNING: Use the power window lock button to prevent children from opening the windows. Using this feature will prevent children from playing with the windows, which could expose them to hazards or distract the driver.

🔑 Opening/Closing the Power Windows

P. 161

WARNING: Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

►► Protecting Child Passengers

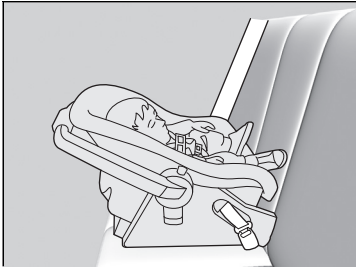
To remind you of the passenger's front airbag hazard and child safety, your vehicle has the warning labels on the passenger's side sun visor and doorjamb*. Please read and follow the instructions on this label.

► **Safety Labels** P. 81

Safety of Infants and Small Children

■ Protecting Infants

An infant must be properly restrained in a rear-facing child restraint system until the infant reaches the child restraint system manufacturer's weight or height limit for the seat.



■ Positioning a rear-facing child restraint system

Child restraint system must be placed and secured in a rear seating position.

- We recommend that you install the child restraint system directly behind the front passenger's seat, move the seat as far forward as needed, and leave it unoccupied.
- Make sure that there is no contact between the child restraint system and the seat in front of it.

If there is, you may wish to get a smaller rear-facing child restraint system.

► Protecting Infants

⚠ WARNING

Placing a rear-facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

Always place a rear-facing child restraint system in the back seat, not the front.

When properly installed, a rear-facing child restraint system may prevent the driver or a front passenger from moving their seat all the way back, or from locking their seat-back in the desired position.

► Protecting Infants

Many experts recommend use of a rear-facing child restraint system for a child up to two years old if the child's height and weight are appropriate for a rear-facing child restraint system.

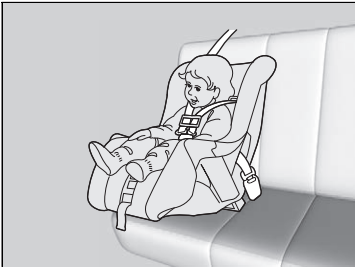
Rear-facing child restraint systems should never be installed in a front-facing position.

Always refer to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions before installation.

If the passenger's front airbag inflates, it can hit the rear-facing child restraint system with great force, which can dislodge or strike the system, and seriously injure the child.

■ Protecting Smaller Children

If a child has exceeded the weight and height limitations of a rear-facing child restraint system, the child should be properly restrained in a firmly secured front-facing child restraint system until they exceed the weight and height limitations for the front-facing child restraint system.



■ Front-facing child restraint system placement

We strongly recommend placing a front-facing child restraint system in a rear seating position.

Placing a front-facing child restraint system in the front seat can be hazardous. A rear seat is the safest place for a child.

►► Protecting Smaller Children

⚠ WARNING

Placing a front-facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the front airbag inflates.

If you must place a front-facing child restraint system in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible, and properly restrain the child.

Educate yourself about the laws and regulations regarding child restraint system use where you are driving, and follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions.

■ Selecting a Child Restraint System

Some child restraint systems are lower anchorage compatible. Some have a rigid-type connector, while others have a flexible-type connector. Both are equally easy to use. Some existing and previously owned child restraint systems can only be installed using the seat belt. Whichever type you choose, follow the child restraint system manufacturer's use and care instructions including recommended expiration dates as well as the instructions in this manual. Proper installation is key to maximising your child's safety.

The flexible type may not be available in your country.

In seating positions and vehicles not equipped with lower anchorages, install a child restraint system using the seat belt and a top tether for added security. This is because all child restraint systems must be secured with the seat belt when the lower anchorage system is not in use. In addition, the child restraint system manufacturer may advise that a seat belt be used to attach an ISOFIX restraint system once a child reaches a specified weight. Please read the child restraint system owner's manual for proper installation instructions.

■ Important consideration when selecting a child restraint system

Make sure the child restraint system meets the following three requirements:

- The child restraint system is the correct type and size for the child.
- The child restraint system is the correct type for the seating position.
- The child restraint system is compliant with safety standards. We recommend a child restraint system compliant with UN Regulation No. 44 or No. 129, or the regulations of the subject countries. Look for the approval mark on the system and the manufacturer's statement of compliance on the box.

►► Selecting a Child Restraint System

Installation of a lower anchorage-compatible child restraint system is simple.

Lower anchorage-compatible child restraint systems have been developed to simplify the installation process and reduce the likelihood of injuries caused by incorrect installation.

Malaysian and Thai models

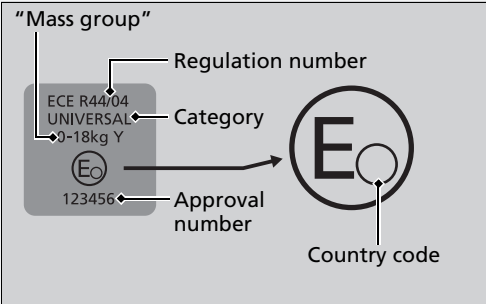
We recommend a rear-facing or a front-facing Honda genuine ISOFIX child restraint system for infants or small children, respectively. Ask your dealer.

■ Child Restraint Systems Standards

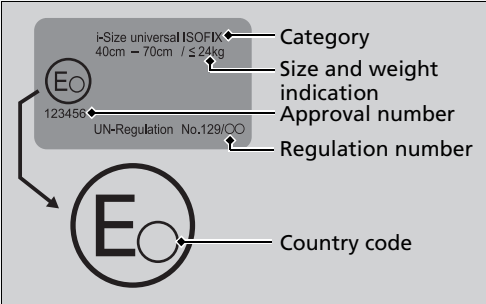
If a child restraint system (whether an i-Size/ISOFIX type or one that is fitted with a seat belt) meets the relevant UN Regulation, it will be affixed with an approval label as shown in the adjacent table. Before purchasing or using any child restraint system, make sure to check the approval label and ensure that it is compatible with your vehicle and the child, and that it complies with the relevant UN Regulation.

▶▶ Selecting a Child Restraint System

Example of UN Regulation No. 44 approval label



Example of UN Regulation No. 129 approval label



Malaysian and Thai models

Locations for Child Restraint System Installation



	Suitable for universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
	Suitable for forward facing universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
	Suitable for i-Size and ISOFIX child restraints systems.
	Suitable for forward facing restraint systems only.
	Never use a rearward facing child restraint system.
	Seat position equipped with Top Tether anchorages.

*1: Adjust the seat slide to the rearmost position and adjust the seat back to the front lock position.

*2: The head restraint must be removed when attaching a forward-reliable junior seat approved by UN R129. Store the removed head restraint in the luggage compartment so that it does not fly during sudden braking or collision.

*3: If you attach a child restraint system to the rear centre seat, the seat belt on left side cannot be used.

*4: If you attach a child restraint system to the rear left seat, the centre seat belt cannot be used.

*5: Attaching a seat belt mounted child restraint system to the rear right seat may make the centre seat belt unusable.

*6: If you attach a ISOFIX child restraint system to the rear right seat, the centre seat belt cannot be used.

Child restraint systems with support legs can be installed in seating positions where i-Size cannot be installed.

			Seating position & Seat position number			
	Size groups Weight Stature		①	②	③	④
			Front passenger* ¹ , * ⁸	2nd row		
				Left	Centre	Right
Seating position suitable for universal belted (yes/no)	Group 0	Up to 10 kg	No	Yes* ⁴	Yes* ³	Yes* ⁵ , * ⁶
	Group 0+	Up to 13 kg				
	Group I	9-18 kg	Yes			
	Group II	15-25 kg				
	Group III	22-36 kg				
i-Size seating position (yes/no)	≤ 150 cm		No	Yes* ⁴	No	Yes* ⁶
Seating position suitable for recommended genuine CRS* ⁷	Refer to genuine CRS list		No	Yes* ⁴	No	Yes* ⁶
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2)	—		No	No	No	No
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3)	Group 0	Up to 10 kg	No	R3* ⁴	No	R3* ⁶
	Group 0+	Up to 13 kg				
	Group I	9-18 kg				
Largest suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3)	Group I	9-18 kg	No	F3* ⁴	No	F3* ⁶
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3)	≤ 150 cm		B3* ²	B3* ⁴	B3* ³	B3* ⁵ , * ⁶

- *1: Adjust the seat slide to the rearmost position and adjust the seat back to the most front lock position.
- *2: The head restraint must be removed when attaching a forward-reliable junior seat approved by UN R129. Store the removed head restraint in the luggage compartment so that it does not fly during sudden braking or collision.
- *3: If you attach a child restraint system to the rear centre seat, the seat belt on left side cannot be used.
- *4: If you attach a child restraint system to the rear left seat, the centre seat belt cannot be used.
- *5: Attaching a seat belt mounted child restraint system to the rear right seat may make the centre seat belt unusable.
- *6: If you attach a ISOFIX child restraint system to the rear right seat, the centre seat belt cannot be used.
- *7: The named Child Restraint Systems (CRS) reflect Honda's recommendations at the date of publication. You should speak to an authorised dealer for up to date details relating to our recommended CRSs. Other CRS may also be suitable - please consult CRS manufacturers for recommended vehicle lists.
- *8: Forward facing only

Child restraint systems with support legs can be installed in seating positions where i-Size cannot be installed.

► Locations for Child Restraint System Installation

When purchasing a child restraint systems, make sure to check the ISOFIX size class or the fixture to ensure that the seat is compatible with your vehicle.

Fixture (CRF)	Description
ISO/L1	Left lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
ISO/L2	Right lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
ISO/R1	Rearward-facing infant seat
ISO/R2X	Reduced-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/R2	Reduced-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/R3	Full-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F2X	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F2	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F3	Full-height, forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/B2	Reduced width forward-facing booster seat
ISO/B3	Full width forward-facing booster seat

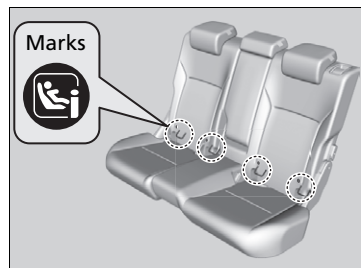
■ Malaysian and Thai Genuine CRS List

R129

Range of application	Child Restraint System	Category
Under 100 cm	Honda Baby & Kids i-Size	i-Size Universal ISOFIX (Rear facing)
Over 71 cm and 15 months to 100 cm	Honda Baby & Kids i-Size	i-Size Universal ISOFIX

■ Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

A lower anchorage-compatible child restraint system can be installed in either of the two outer rear seats. A child restraint system is attached to the lower anchorages with either the rigid or flexible type of connectors.



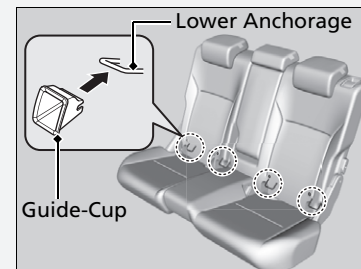
1. Locate the lower anchorages under the marks.

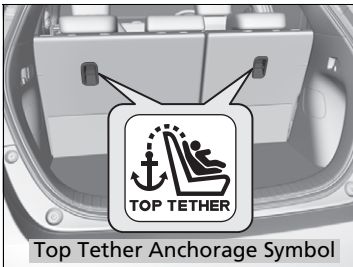
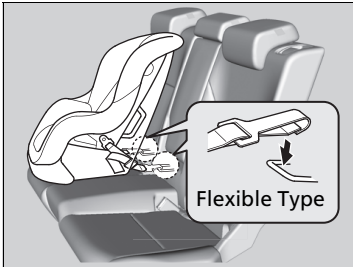
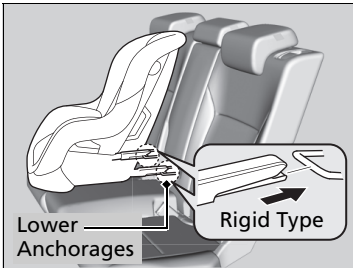
► Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

⚠ WARNING

Never attach two child restraint systems to the same anchorage. In a collision, one anchorage may not be strong enough to hold two child restraint system attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.

Some child restraint systems come with optional guide-cups, which avoid possible damage to the seat surface. Follow the manufacturer's instructions when using the guide-cups, and attach them to the lower anchorages as shown in the image.





2. Place the child restraint system on the vehicle seat, then attach the child restraint system to the lower anchorages according to the instructions that came with the child restraint system.

► When installing the child restraint system, make sure that the lower anchorages are not obstructed by the seat belt or any other object.

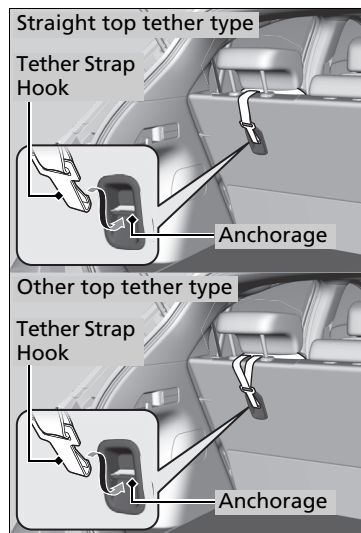
✎ Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

WARNING: Never use a hook that does not come with a Top Tether Anchorage Symbol when securing an installed child restraint system.

For your child's safety, when using a child restraint system installed using the lower anchorage system, make sure that the child restraint system is properly secured to the vehicle.

A child restraint system that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.

The flexible type may not be available in your country.



Child restraint system with tether strap

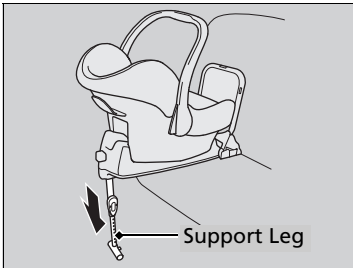
3. Pull up the head restraint and push rearward until it latches.

Models with luggage area cover

- Retract the luggage area cover.

➤ **Luggage Area Cover*** P. 203

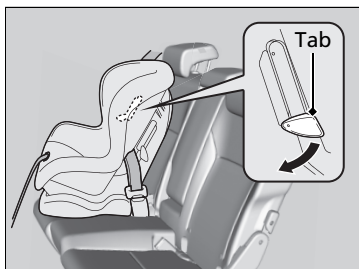
4. Route the tether strap between the head restraint legs.
Make sure the strap is not twisted.
5. Secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage.
6. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.
7. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back, and side to side; little movement should be felt.



Child restraint system with support leg

3. Extend the support leg until it touches the floor as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.
 - Confirm that the section of the floor on which the support leg rests is level. If the section is not level, the support leg will not provide adequate support.
 - Make sure that there is no contact between the child restraint system and the seat in front of it.

■ Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt



1. Raise the head restraint to its highest position.
2. Place the child restraint system on the vehicle seat.
3. Route the seat belt through the child restraint system according to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions, and insert the latch plate into the buckle.

► Insert the latch plate fully until it clicks.

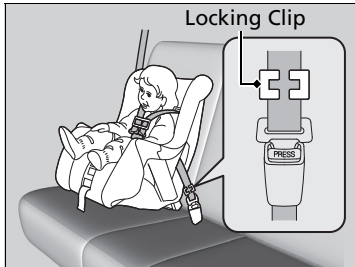
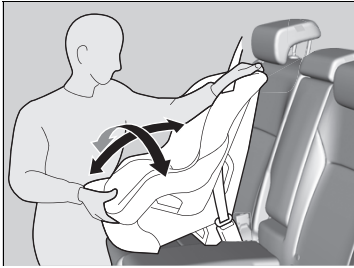
4. Push down the tab. Route the shoulder part of the belt into the slit at the side of the restraint.
5. Grab the shoulder part of the belt near the buckle, and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt.

► When doing this, place your weight on the child restraint system and push it into the vehicle seat.

6. Position the belt properly and push up the tab. Make sure the belt is not twisted.
► When pushing up the tab, pull up the upper shoulder part of the belt to remove any slack from the belt.

▣ Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

A child restraint system that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.



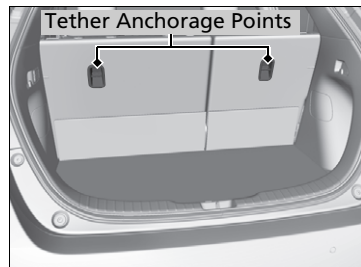
7. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back, and side to side; little movement should be felt.
8. Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled.

If your child restraint system does not come with a mechanism that secures the belt, install a locking clip on the seat belt.

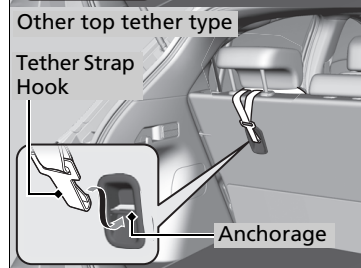
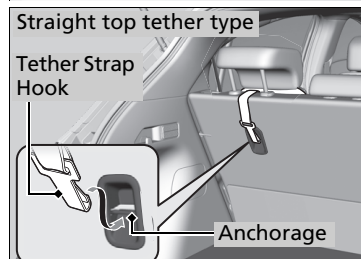
After going through from the step 1 to 3, pull up the shoulder part of the belt and make sure there is no slack in the lap portion.

4. Tightly grasp the belt near the latch plate. Pinch both parts of the belt together so they do not slip through the latch plate. Unbuckle the seat belt.
5. Install the locking clip as shown in the image. Position the clip as close as possible to the latch plate.
6. Insert the latch plate into the buckle. Go to step 7 and 8.

■ Adding Security with a Tether



A tether anchorage point is provided behind each rear outer seating position. If you have a child restraint system that comes with a tether but can be installed with a seat belt, the tether may be used for additional security.



1. Pull up the head restraint and push rearward until it latches.

Models with luggage area cover

- Retract the luggage area cover.

► **Luggage Area Cover*** P. 203

2. Route the tether strap through the head restraint legs. Make sure the strap is not twisted.
3. Secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage.
4. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.

►► Adding Security with a Tether

WARNING: Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Always use a tether for front-facing child restraint system whether using the seat belt or lower anchorages.

Safety of Larger Children

■ Protecting Larger Children

The following pages give instructions on how to check proper seat belt fit, what kind of booster seat to use if one is needed, and important precautions for a child who must sit in front.

■ Checking Seat Belt Fit

When a child is too big for a child restraint system, secure the child in a rear seat using the lap/shoulder seat belt. Have the child sit upright and all the way back, then answer the following questions.



■ Checklist

- Do the child's knees bend comfortably over the edge of the seat?
- Does the shoulder belt cross between the child's neck and arm?
- Is the lap part of the seat belt as low as possible, touching the child's thighs?
- Will the child be able to stay seated like this for the whole trip?

If you answer yes to all these questions, the child is ready to wear the lap/shoulder seat belt correctly. If you answer no to any question, the child needs to ride on a booster seat until the seat belt fits properly without a booster seat.

►► Safety of Larger Children

⚠ WARNING

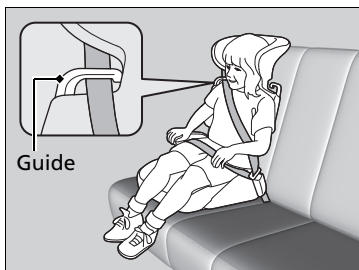
Allowing a child aged 12 or under to sit in front can result in injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

If a larger child must ride in front, move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible, have the child sit up properly and wear the seat belt properly, using a booster seat if needed.

Booster Seats



If a lap/shoulder seat belt cannot be used properly, position the child in a booster seat in the rear seat. For the child's safety, check that the child meets the booster seat manufacturer's recommendations.



A backrest is available for a specific booster seat. Install the backrest to the booster seat and adjust it to the vehicle seat according to the booster seat manufacturer's instructions. Make sure the seat belt is properly routed through the guide at the shoulder of the backrest and the belt does not touch and cross the child's neck.

Booster Seats

When installing a booster seat, make sure to read the instructions that came with it, and install the seat accordingly.

There are high- and low-type booster seats. Choose a booster seat that allows the child to wear the seat belt correctly.

We recommend a booster seat with a backrest as it is easier to adjust the shoulder belt.

■ Protecting Larger Children - Final Checks

Your vehicle has a rear seat where children can be properly restrained. If you ever have to carry a group of children, and a child must ride in front:

- Make sure you read and fully understand the instructions and safety information in this manual.
- Move the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Have the child sit upright and well back in the seat.
- Check that the seat belt is properly positioned so that the child is secure in the seat.

■ Monitoring child passengers

We strongly recommend that you keep an eye on child passengers. Even older, more mature children sometimes need to be reminded to fasten their seat belts and sit up properly.


Carbon Monoxide Gas

The engine exhaust from this vehicle contains carbon monoxide, a colourless, odourless, and highly toxic gas. As long as you properly maintain your vehicle, carbon monoxide gas will not get into the interior.

■ Have the exhaust system inspected for leaks whenever

- The exhaust system is making an unusual noise.
- The exhaust system may have been damaged.
- The vehicle is raised for an oil change.

When you operate a vehicle with the tailgate open, airflow can pull exhaust gas into the interior and create a hazardous condition. If you must drive with the tailgate open, open all the windows and set the cooling system* or climate control system* as shown below.

1. Select the fresh air mode.
2. Select the  mode.
3. Set the fan speed to high.
4. Set the temperature control to a comfortable setting.

Adjust the cooling system* or climate control system* in the same manner if you sit in your parked vehicle with the engine running.

Carbon Monoxide Gas

WARNING

Carbon monoxide gas is toxic.

Breathing it can cause unconsciousness and even kill you.

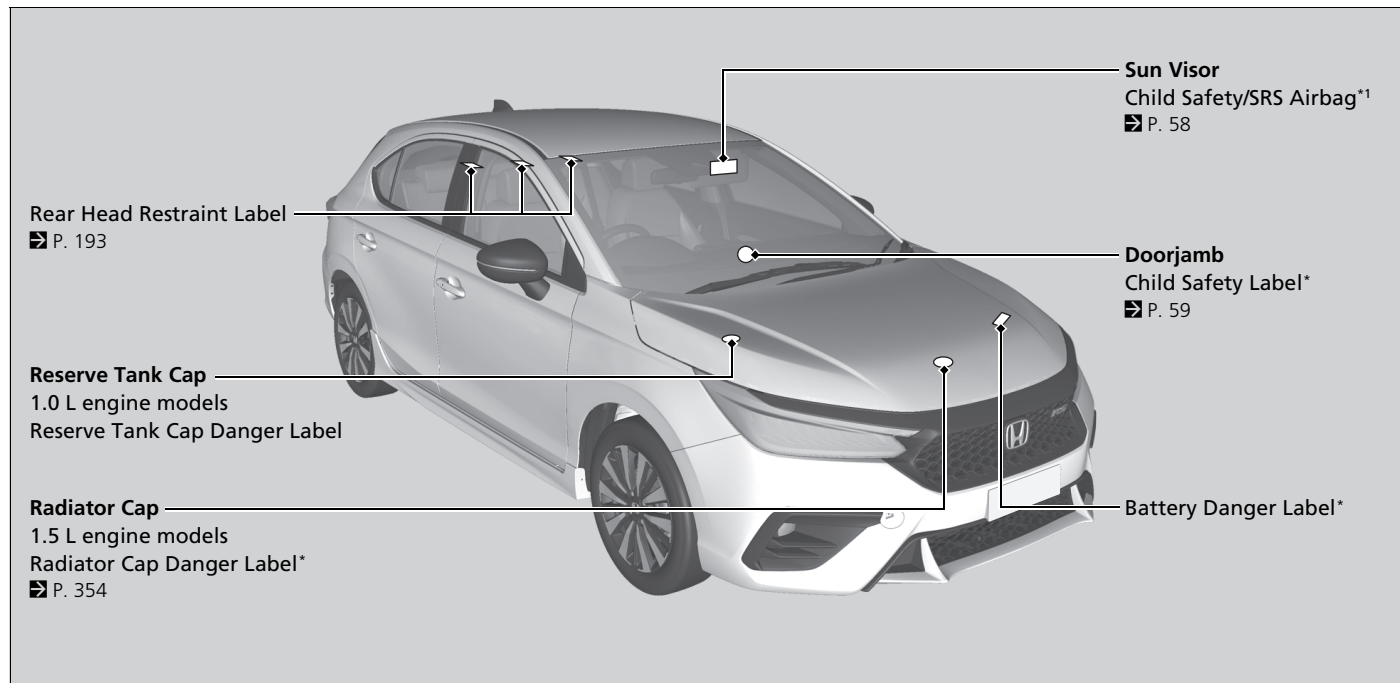
Avoid any enclosed areas or activities that expose you to carbon monoxide.

An enclosed area such as a garage can quickly fill up with carbon monoxide gas.
Do not run the engine with the garage door closed.
Even when the garage door is open, drive out of the garage immediately after starting the engine.

Label Locations

These labels are in the locations shown. They warn you of potential hazards that can cause serious injury or death. Read these labels carefully.

If a label comes off or becomes hard to read, contact a dealer for a replacement.



*1: Right-hand drive models shown. For the left-hand drive models, these labels are located at the symmetrically opposite to the right-hand drive model.

* Not available on all models

























Instrument Panel

This chapter describes the buttons, indicators, and gauges that are used while driving.



Indicators	84
Gauges and Displays	100
Gauges	100
Driver Information Interface (A-type meter)	102
Driver Information Interface (B-type Meter)	123



















Indicators come on/blink depending on the condition of the vehicle. Messages may display on the driver information interface at the same time. Please take the appropriate action outlined in the message, such as contacting a dealer.

 *1	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	→ P. 86
 *1	Brake System Indicator (Amber)	→ P. 87
 *1	Malfunction Indicator Lamp	→ P. 87
 *1	Charging System Indicator	→ P. 87
 *2	Transmission System Indicator	→ P. 88
 *3	Transmission System Indicator	→ P. 88
 *2	M (7-speed manual shift mode) Indicator*/Shift Indicator*	→ P. 88
 *3	M (7-speed manual shift mode) Indicator*/Shift Indicator*	→ P. 88
 *2	Shift Position Indicator*	→ P. 88
 *3	Shift Position Indicator*	→ P. 88
 *	Shift Up Indicator*	→ P. 88
 *	Shift Down Indicator*	→ P. 88
 *	Seat Belt Reminder Indicator	→ P. 89
 *	Low Fuel Indicator (Amber)	→ P. 90
 *1	Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator	→ P. 90
 *1	Supplemental Restraint System Indicator	→ P. 90
 *1	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator	→ P. 91
 *1	VSA OFF Indicator	→ P. 91
 *1	Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator	→ P. 91
 *	Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators	→ P. 92
 *	Lights On Indicator	→ P. 92
 *	High-Beam Indicator	→ P. 92
 *1	Auto High-Beam Indicator	→ P. 92
 *	Fog Light Indicator*	→ P. 92




*1: When you set the power mode to ON, these indicators come on to indicate that system checks are being performed. They go off a few seconds later or after the engine has started. If an indicator does not come on or turn off, there may be a malfunction in the corresponding system. To resolve the issue, follow the instructions in the owner's manual.




*2: Models with A-type meter













*3: Models with B-type meter

	ECON Mode Indicator* → P. 94
	System Message Indicator → P. 94
	Low Temperature Indicator (Blue) → P. 90
	Immobilizer System Indicator → P. 93
	Security System Alarm Indicator → P. 93
	*1 Auto Idle Stop System Indicator (Amber)* → P. 94
	*1 Auto Idle Stop Indicator (Green)* → P. 94
	*1 Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Indicator (Amber) → P. 95
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Indicator (White/Green) → P. 95
	*1 Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Amber) → P. 96
	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (White/Green) → P. 96
	*1 Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Amber) → P. 96
	*1 Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Grey)* → P. 96
	*1 Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Amber) → P. 97
	Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF Indicator* → P. 97
	Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Grey)* → P. 97
	*1 Safety Support Indicator (Amber) → P. 98
	*1 Safety Support Indicator (Green/Grey) → P. 99

*1: When you set the power mode to ON, these indicators come on to indicate that system checks are being performed. They go off a few seconds later or after the engine has started. If an indicator does not come on or turn off, there may be a malfunction in the corresponding system. To resolve the issue, follow the instructions in the owner's manual.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
 (Red)	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the parking brake is applied, and goes off when it is released. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The beeper sounds and the indicator comes on if you drive with the parking brake not fully released.
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the brake fluid level is low. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on while driving - Make sure the parking brake is released. Stop in a safe place and check the brake fluid level.  What to do when the indicator comes on while driving P. 424
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if there is a problem with the brake system. 	<div>Thai models</div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on along with the Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (amber) - Immediately stop in a safe place. Contact a dealer for repair. The brake pedal becomes harder to operate. Depress the pedal further than you normally do. <div>All models</div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on along with the ABS indicator - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.  If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On P. 424




Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
 (Amber)	Brake System Indicator (Amber)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if there is a problem with a system related to braking other than the conventional brake system. 	<p>Thai models</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on while driving - Avoid high speeds and sudden braking. Take the vehicle to a dealer immediately. <p>Except Thai models</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on while driving - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability.
	Malfunction Indicator Lamp	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if there is a problem with the emissions control systems. Blinks when a misfire in the engine's cylinders is detected. 	<p>➤ If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks P. 423</p>
	Charging System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when there is a problem with the charging system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stop in a safe place and contact a dealer immediately. <p>➤ Checking the Battery P. 384</p> <p>➤ If the Charging System Indicator Comes On P. 423</p>






Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
 *1  *2	Transmission System Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks if the transmission system has a problem. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately. <p>Thai models</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Do not drive displays on the driver information interface - Immediately stop in a safe place and contact a dealer.
 *1  *2	M (7-speed manual shift mode) Indicator*/Shift Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the 7-speed manual shift mode is applied. 	 7-Speed Manual Shift Mode P. 234
 *1  *2	Shift Position Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates the current shift position. 	 Shifting P. 231
	Shift Up Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when shifting up is recommended. 	 Shift Up/Down Indicator P. 237
	Shift Down Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when shifting down is recommended. 	 Shift Up/Down Indicator P. 237




*1:Models with A-type meter











*2:Models with B-type meter


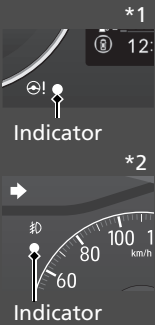
* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Seat Belt Reminder Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if you are not wearing a seat belt when you set the power mode to ON. If the front passenger is not wearing a seat belt, the indicator comes on a few seconds later. <p>Malaysian models</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a while when the rear seat belt is unfastened while the power mode is ON. Blinks while driving if you and/or any passenger has not fastened a seat belt. The beeper sounds and the indicator blinks at regular intervals. <p>Except Malaysian models</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks while driving if you and/or the front passenger has not fastened a seat belt. The beeper sounds and the indicator blinks at regular intervals. 	<p>Malaysian models</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The beeper stops and the indicator goes off when you and the passengers fasten their seat belts. Stays on after you and/or the passengers have fastened the seat belt(s) - A detection error may have occurred in the sensor. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.  Seat Belt Reminder P. 38 <p>Except Malaysian models</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The beeper stops and the indicator goes off when you and the front passenger fasten their seat belts. Stays on after you and/or the front passenger has fastened the seat belt(s) - A detection error may have occurred in the sensor. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.  Seat Belt Reminder P. 38

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Low Fuel Indicator (Amber)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the fuel reserve is running low (approximately 5.3 Litres left). 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refuel your vehicle as soon as possible.
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks if there is a problem with the fuel gauge. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if there is a problem with the ABS. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability but no anti-lock function.  Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) P. 314
	Supplemental Restraint System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if a problem with any of the following is detected: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Supplemental Restraint System Side airbag system Side curtain airbag system* Seat belt tensioner 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	Low Temperature Indicator (Blue)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the engine coolant temperature is low. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If the indicator stays on after the engine has reached normal operating temperature, there may be a problem with the temperature sensors. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.











Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Blinks when VSA is active. 	—
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on if there is a problem with the VSA system, brake assist system, hill start assist system, starting assist brake function*, or agile handling assist. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System P. 246 ➤ Brake Assist System P. 315 ➤ Hill Start Assist System P. 227 ➤ Starting Assist Brake Function P. 245 ➤ Agile Handling Assist P. 248
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on if the VSA system is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then reconnected. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on when you partially disable VSA. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ VSA On and Off P. 247
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on if the VSA system is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then reconnected. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on if there is a problem with the EPS system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On P. 424 • Do Not Drive displays on the driver information interface - Immediately stop in a safe place and contact a dealer. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On P. 424




Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Blinks when you operate the turn signal lever. • Blinks along with all turn signals when you press the hazard warning button. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Does not blink or blinks rapidly  Replacing Light Bulbs P. 361
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Blinks along with all turn signals when you depress the brake pedal while the high speed driving. 	 Emergency Stop Signal P. 316
	Lights On Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on when the position, tail, and other external lights are on. 	 Light Switches P. 167
	High-Beam Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on when the high beam headlights are on. 	—
	Auto High-Beam Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on when all the operating conditions of the auto high-beam are met. 	 Auto High-Beam P. 172
	Fog Light Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on when the fog lights are on. 	 Fog Lights* P. 170





Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
 <p>*1 Indicator</p> <p>*2 Indicator</p>	<p>Immobilizer System Indicator</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks if the immobilizer system cannot recognise the key information. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks - You cannot start the engine. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF, then select the ON mode again. Repeatedly blinks - The system may be malfunctioning. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems can occur.
 <p>*1 Indicator</p> <p>*2 Indicator</p>	<p>Security System Alarm Indicator</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks when the security system alarm has been set. 	<p>➡ Security System Alarm P. 160</p>




*1:Models with A-type meter

*2:Models with B-type meter


Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	ECON Mode Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the ECON mode is on. 	 ECON Mode P. 239
	System Message Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on along with a beep when a problem is detected. A system message on the driver information interface appears at the same time. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> While the indicator is on, press the  (home) button, and select  to see the message again.  Switching the Display P. 102, 123 Refer to the Indicators information in this chapter when a system message appears on the driver information interface. Respond to the message accordingly. The driver information interface does not return to the normal screen unless the warning is cancelled, or the left selector wheel is pressed.
	Auto Idle Stop System Indicator (Amber)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the Auto Idle Stop system has been turned off by the Auto Idle Stop OFF button. Blinks if there is a problem with the Auto Idle Stop system. 	 Auto Idle Stop System ON/OFF P. 241 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	Auto Idle Stop Indicator (Green)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when Auto Idle Stop is in operation. The engine automatically shuts off. 	 Auto Idle Stop * P. 240







Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Indicator (Amber)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if there is a problem with ACC. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on while driving - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if the ACC is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then reconnected. Indicator may come on temporarily when the maximum permissible weight is exceeded. ACC has been automatically cancelled. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. Make sure the total load is within the maximum permissible weight. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Load Limit P. 220 Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Indicator (White/Green)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Lights up in white when you press the . Lights up in green while the system is in operation. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) P. 273

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Amber)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if there is a problem with the LKAS. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicator may come on temporarily when the maximum permissible weight is exceeded. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Make sure the total load is within the maximum permissible weight. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 📖 Load Limit P. 220 Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (White/Green)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Lights up in white when you press the LKAS button. Lights up in green when the LKAS is in operation. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 📖 Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) P. 291
	Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Amber)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if there is a problem with the CMBS or it cannot be used temporarily due to issues such as dirt on the windscreen near the camera. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The Safety Support Indicator (Amber) comes on at the same time. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 📖 Safety Support Indicator (Amber) P. 98
		<div>Models with A-type meter</div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the CMBS is off. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 📖 Safety Support P. 108
	Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Grey)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the CMBS is off. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 📖 Safety Support P. 131

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Amber)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if there is a problem with the Road Departure Mitigation System or it cannot be used temporarily due to issues such as dirt on the windscreen near the camera. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The Safety Support Indicator (Amber) comes on at the same time. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Safety Support Indicator (Amber) P. 98
		Models with A-type meter <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the Road Departure Mitigation System steering assist is automatically turned off. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Road Departure Mitigation System P. 265
		Models with A-type meter <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the Road Departure Mitigation System is off. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Safety Support P. 108
	Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the Road Departure Mitigation System steering assist is automatically turned off. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Road Departure Mitigation System P. 265
	Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Grey)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the Road Departure Mitigation System is off. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Safety Support P. 131

* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Safety Support Indicator (Amber)	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Comes on if there is a problem with the Road Departure Mitigation system or CMBS.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
		<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Indicator may come on temporarily when the maximum permissible weight is exceeded.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Make sure the total load is within the maximum permissible weight. 🚚 Load Limit P. 220• Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
		<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Comes on if the Road Departure Mitigation system and CMBS are deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected and then reconnected.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Safety Support Indicator (Amber)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the Road Departure Mitigation system and/or CMBS shuts itself off. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on - The temperature inside the camera is too high. Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. The system activates when the temperature inside the camera cools down.  Front Wide View Camera P. 310
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on - The area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place and wipe the debris off with a soft cloth. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator and message are still displayed even after you have cleaned the area around the camera.  Front Wide View Camera P. 310 It may come on when the ambient conditions are dark, such as when driving in a tunnel, or at night, dawn, or dusk.
	Safety Support Indicator (Green/Grey)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Lights up in green when the Road Departure Mitigation system and CMBS are on. Lights up in green and grey when one or more of the systems above are off. Lights up in grey when all systems above are off. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none">  Road Departure Mitigation system On and Off P. 269  CMBS On and Off P. 256

Gauges

Gauges include the speedometer, fuel gauge, and other related indicators. They are displayed when the power mode is in ON.

■ Speedometer

Displays your driving speed in km/h.

■ Fuel Gauge

Displays the amount of fuel left in the fuel tank.

■ Tachometer


Shows the number of engine revolutions per minute.

■ Odometer

Shows the total number of kilometres that your vehicle has accumulated.

» Fuel Gauge

NOTICE


You should refuel when the reading approaches . Running out of fuel can cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.

The actual amount of remaining fuel may differ from the fuel gauge reading.

» Tachometer

Models with B-type Meter

You can turn the tachometer display on or off.

 **Settings** P. 133

■ Outside Temperature

Shows the outside temperature in Celsius.

If the outside temperature has been below 3°C at the time you set the power mode to ON, the **Outside Temperature Low** message appears on the driver information interface.

■ Adjusting the outside temperature display

Adjust the temperature reading up to ±3°C if the temperature reading seems incorrect.

■ Clock

Shows the clock.

■ Current Mode for ACC and the LKAS

Shows the current mode for ACC and LKAS.

► **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)** P. 273

► **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 291

►► Outside Temperature

The temperature sensor is in the front bumper. Road heat and exhaust from another vehicle can affect the temperature reading when your vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h.

It may take several minutes for the display to be updated after the temperature reading has stabilised.

You can adjust the temperature reading.

► **Settings** P. 110, 133

►► Clock

You can adjust the time manually and change the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock.

► **Clock** P. 142

Driver Information Interface (A-type meter)

The driver information interface shows information such as the estimated travelable distance and fuel economy of the vehicle. It also displays messages such as warnings and other helpful information.


When a warning message displays, please check the message and contact a dealer to have the vehicle inspected if necessary. Please refer to the pages below if the

Engine oil pressure low or **Engine temperature too hot** message is displayed.


✎ **If the Engine Oil Pressure Low Warning Appears** P. 422

✎ **Overheating** P. 417

Switching the Display

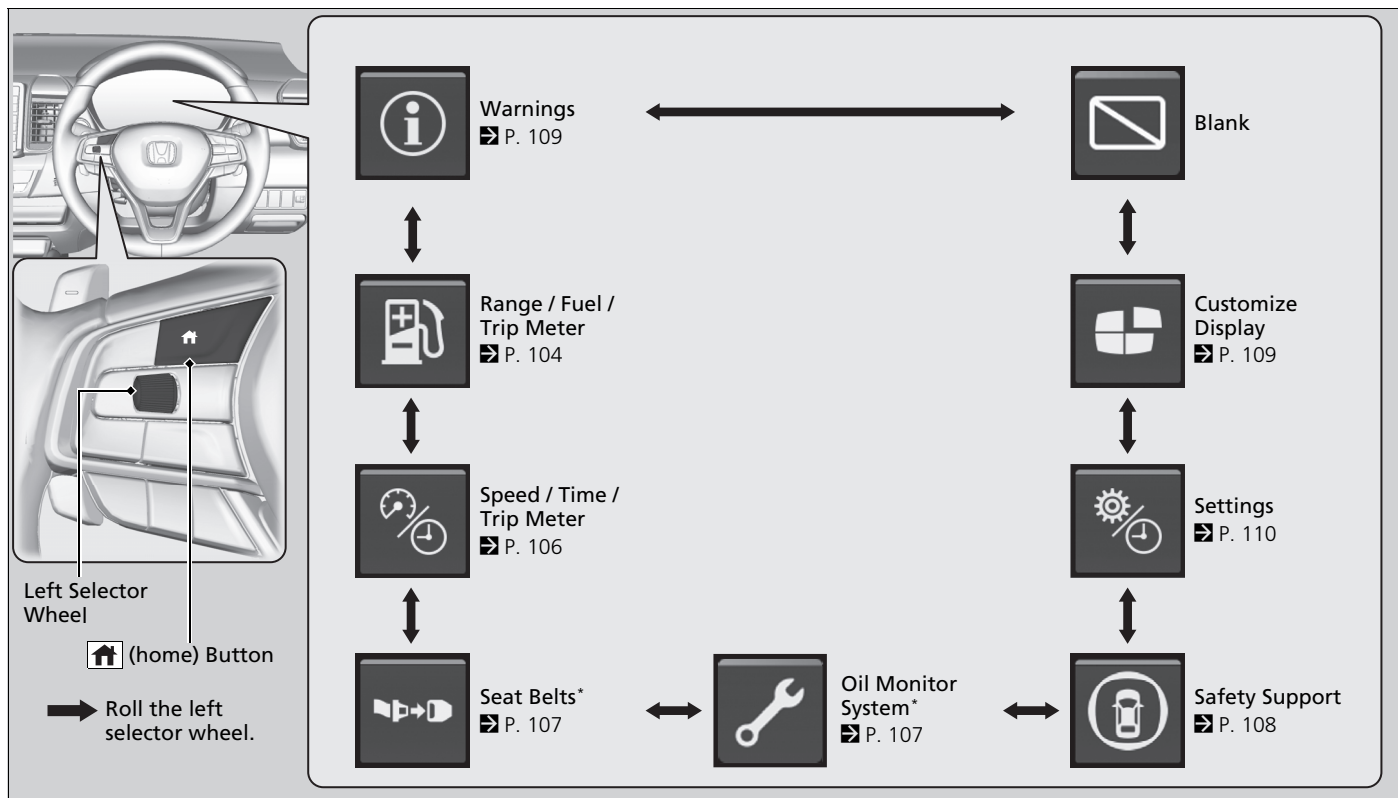
Press the  (home) button, then roll the left selector wheel to scroll to the content you want to see. Press the left selector wheel to see detailed information.

Switching the Display

To go back to the home screen, press the  (home) button.

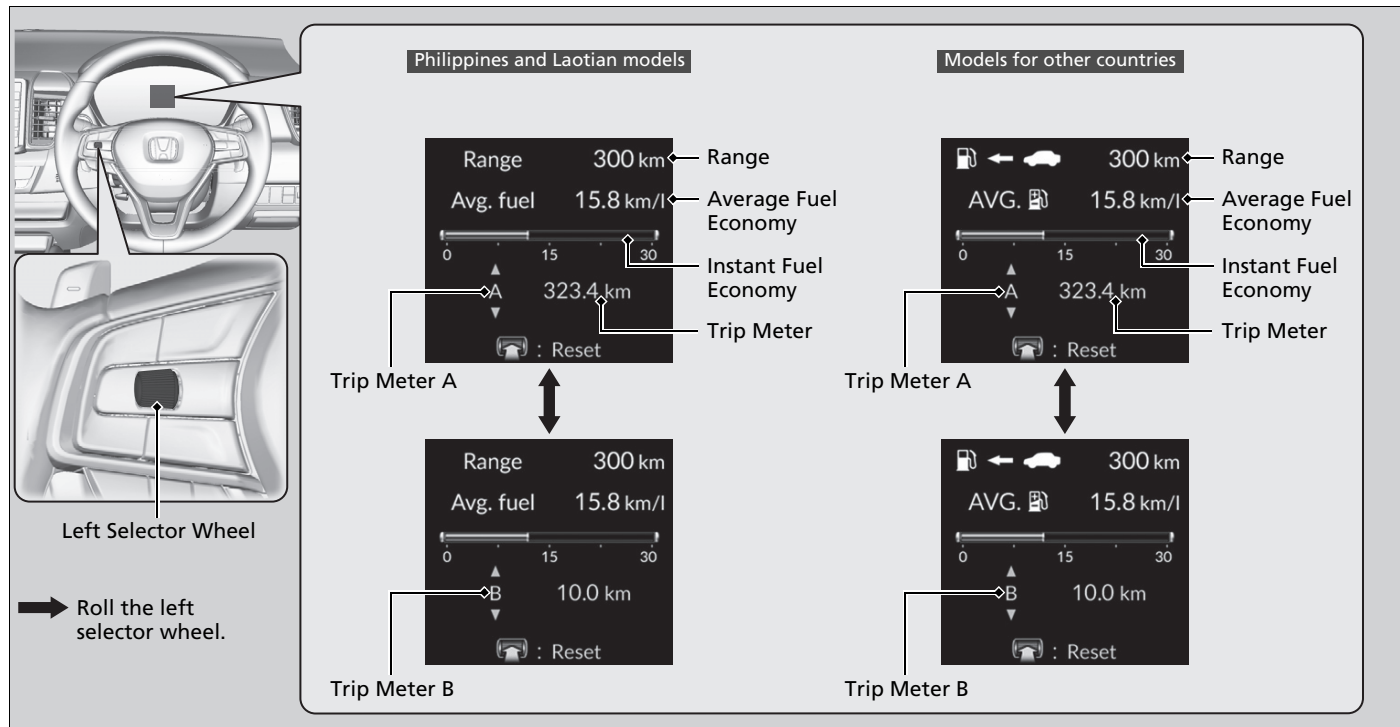
You can add or delete the meter contents.

✎ **Customize Display** P. 109



■ Range / Fuel / Trip Meter

Roll the left selector wheel to switch between trip meter A and trip meter B.



■ Trip meter

Shows the total number of kilometres driven since the last reset. Meters A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

Resetting a trip meter

To reset the trip meter, display it, press the left selector wheel, and then select **Reset**.

- The trip meter is reset to 0.0.

■ Average Fuel Economy

Shows the estimated average fuel economy of each trip meter in km/l or l/100 km. The display is updated at set intervals. When a trip meter is reset, the average fuel economy is also reset.

■ Instant Fuel Economy

Shows the instant fuel economy as a bar graph in km/l or l/100 km.

■ Range

Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining fuel. This estimated distance is based on the vehicle's current fuel economy.

»Range / Fuel / Trip Meter

You can change the unit of fuel consumption in either km/l and l/100km.

► **Settings** P. 110

»Average Fuel Economy

You can change when to reset the average fuel economy.

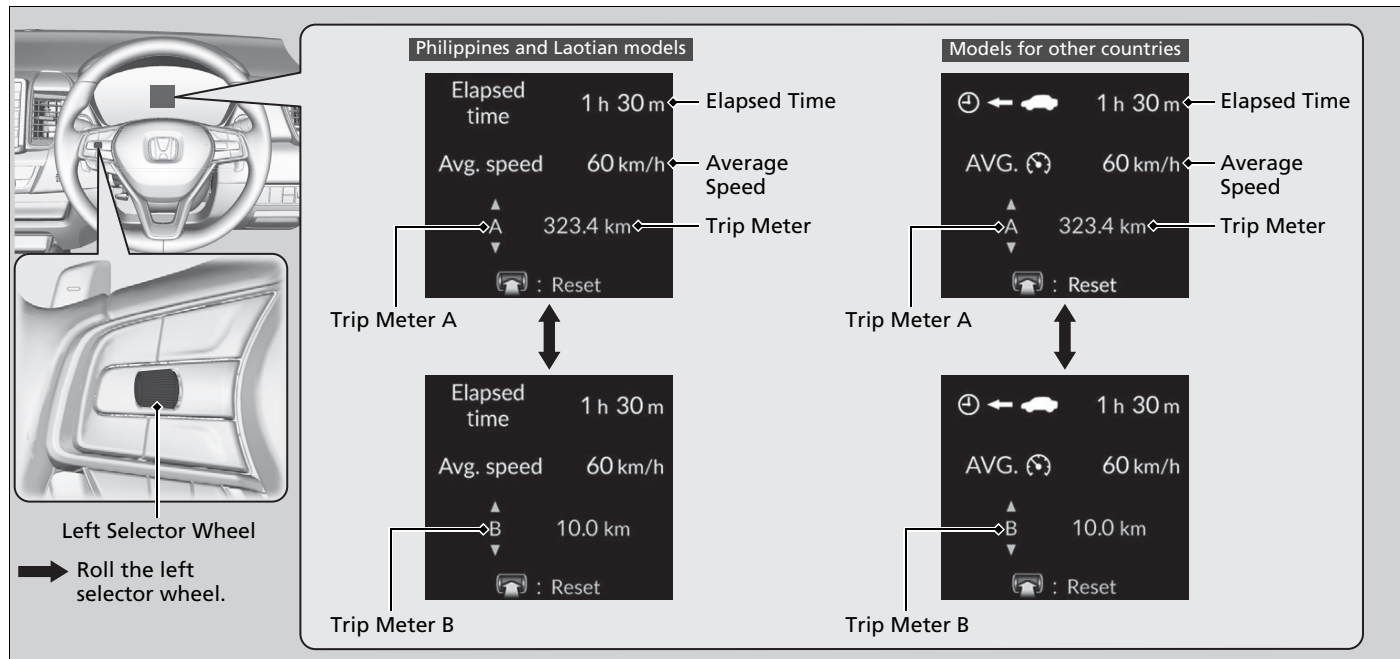
► **Settings** P. 110

»Range

The driving range displayed is only an estimate and may differ from the actual distance the vehicle can travel.

■ Speed / Time / Trip Meter

Roll the left selector wheel to switch between trip meter A and trip meter B.



■ Trip meter

► Trip meter P. 105

■ Elapsed time

Shows the time elapsed since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

■ Average speed

Shows the average speed in km/h since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

■ Oil Monitor System*

Show the oil monitor system.

► Oil Monitor System* P. 333

■ Seat Belts*

Occurs, under specified conditions, when seat belts are latched or unlatched.

► Seat Belt Reminder P. 38

► Elapsed time

You can change when to reset the elapsed time.

► Settings P. 110

► Average speed

You can change when to reset the average speed.

► Settings P. 110

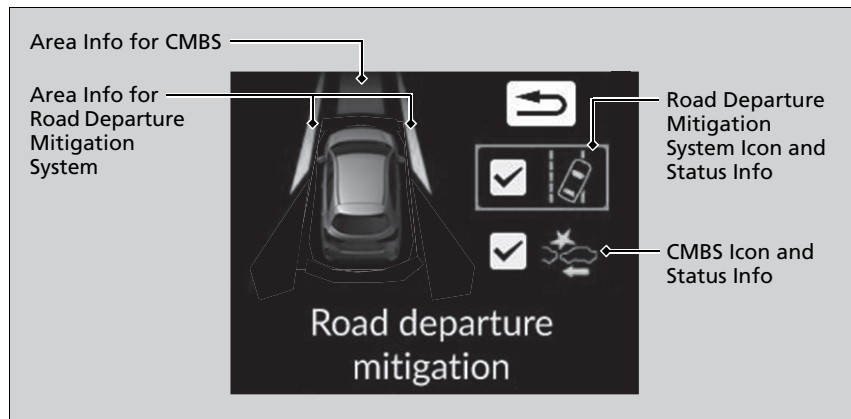
* Not available on all models

■ Safety Support

Indicates the status of the Road Departure Mitigation system and CMBS, such as On, Off, or Failure, by colour and letters.

The following colours indicate the status of any of the above-mentioned systems:

- Green: The system is on.
- Grey: The system is off.
- Amber: There is a problem with the system.



►► Safety Support

If a system is indicated by the colour amber, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

To turn each system on or off, first press the left selector wheel to switch displays. From the next display, you can select which system to turn on or off.

► **Road Departure Mitigation system On and Off** P. 269

► **CMBS On and Off** P. 256

You can also confirm the status of each function by the colour of the indicator.

► **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Amber)** P. 96

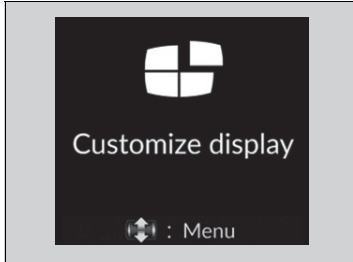
► **Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Amber)** P. 97


► **Safety Support Indicator (Amber)** P. 98

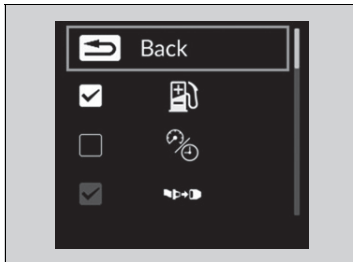
► **Safety Support Indicator (Green/Grey)** P. 99

■ Customize Display

You can choose which icons to display on the home screen.



1. Roll the left selector wheel until  is selected, then press the left selector wheel.
2. Roll the left selector wheel.



3. Roll the left selector wheel to scroll between icons, then press the left selector wheel to check or uncheck them.

■ Warnings

You can check if there are any active warning messages.

» Customize Display

Icons that are grey cannot be removed from the home screen.

When you customize settings, shift to **[P]**.



» Warnings

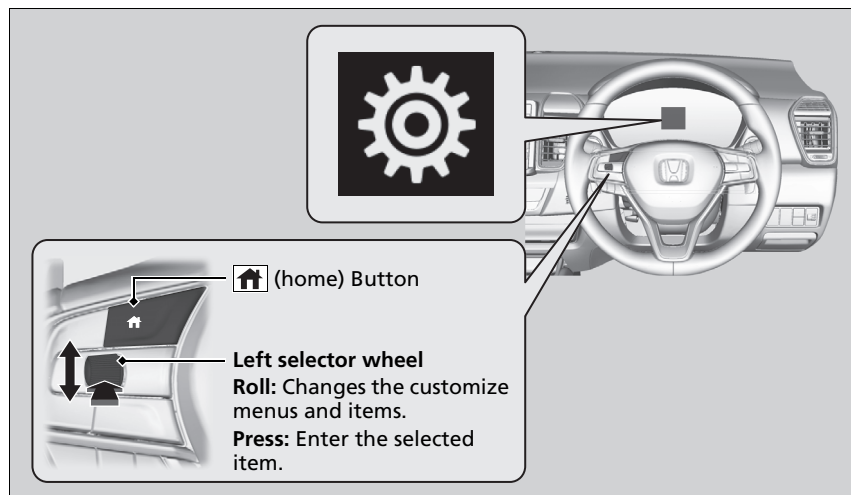
If there are multiple warnings, you can roll the left selector wheel to see other warnings.

■ Settings

Use the driver information interface to customize certain features.

■ How to customize


Select the  screen by pressing the  (home) button and rolling the left selector wheel while the power mode is in ON, and the vehicle is at a complete stop. Press the left selector wheel.



» Settings

To customize other features, roll the left selector wheel.

- **List of customizable options** P. 111
- **Example of customization settings** P. 119

When you customize settings, shift to .

■ List of customizable options

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Clock setup	Adjust clock	Adjusts the time. ▶ Adjusting the Clock P. 142	—
	Clock display	Sets time display 24 hour, 12 hour or off.	24h/12h^{*1}/OFF
Driver assist system setup	Philippines and Laotian models Forward collision warning distance Models for other countries Preceding vehicle proximity warning distance	Changes the distance at which Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) alerts.	Philippines and Laotian models Long/Normal^{*1}/Short Models for other countries Far/Normal^{*1}/Near
	Philippines and Laotian models ACC forward vehicle detect beep Models for other countries ACC vehicle ahead detected beep	Causes the system to beep when a vehicle is detected or when the vehicle is out of ACC range.	ON/OFF^{*1}
	Lead car departure notification system	Changes the setting for the lead car departure notification system.	Normal^{*1}/Early/OFF

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Driver assist system setup	Road departure mitigation setting	Changes the setting for the Road Departure Mitigation system.	Philippines and Laotian models Narrow/Normal* ¹ /Wide/ Warning only Models for other countries Early/Normal* ¹ /Delayed/ Warning only
	Philippines and Laotian models Lane keeping assist suspend beep Models for other countries Lane keep assist beep	Causes the system to beep when the LKAS is suspended.	ON/OFF* ¹

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Meter setup	Adjust outside temp. display	Adjusts the temperature reading by a few degrees.	-3°C ~ ±0°C*1 ~ +3°C
	"Trip A" reset timing	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter A, average fuel economy A, average speed A, and elapsed time A.	<div>Philippines and Laotian models</div> When fully refueled/IGN OFF/ Manually reset*1 <div>Models for other countries</div> When fully refueled/When ignition is turned OFF/ Manual reset*1
	"Trip B" reset timing	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter B, average fuel economy B, average speed B, and elapsed time B.	<div>Philippines and Laotian models</div> When fully refueled/IGN OFF/ Manually reset*1 <div>Models for other countries</div> When fully refueled/When ignition is turned OFF/ Manual reset*1

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Meter setup	Philippines and Laotian models Adjust alarm volume	Changes the alarm volume, such as buzzers, warnings, turn signal sound, and so on.	Philippines and Laotian models High/Mid^{*1}/Low
	Models for other countries Alarm volume control		Models for other countries Max/Mid^{*1}/Min
	Fuel efficiency backlight	Turns the ambient meter feature on and off.	ON^{*1}/OFF
	Rear seat reminder	Turns the Rear Seat Reminder feature on and off.	ON^{*1}/OFF
	Fuel economy unit	Selects the fuel economy unit.	km/l^{*1}/l/100km
Keyless access setup	Keyless access beep volume	Changes the beep tone that sounds when you have a keyless remote and grab a front door handle.	High^{*1}/Low
	Keyless access beep	Causes the beeper to sound when you unlock/lock the doors.	ON^{*1}/OFF
	Remote start system ON/OFF[*]	Turns the remote engine start feature on and off.	ON^{*1}/OFF

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Lighting setup	Philippines and Laotian models Auto high-beam	Turns the auto high-beam on and off.	ON^{*1}/OFF
	Models for other countries Auto High-Beam		
	Philippines and Laotian models Interior light dimming time	Changes the length of time the interior lights stay on after you close the doors.	60sec/30sec^{*1}/15sec
	Models for other countries Interior light dimmer duration		
	Philippines and Laotian models Headlight auto off timer	Changes the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door.	60sec/30sec/15sec^{*1}/0sec
	Models for other countries Headlight auto OFF timer		

*1:Default Setting

Lighting setup

*1:Default Setting

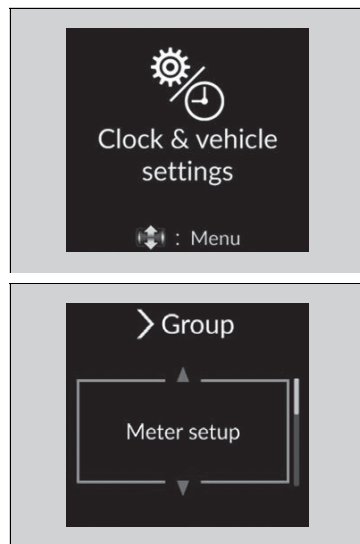
Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Door setup	Auto door lock	Changes the setting for when the doors and the tailgate automatically lock.	With vehicle speed*¹/Shift from P/OFF
	Auto door unlock	Changes the setting for when the doors and the tailgate automatically unlock.	Shift to P*¹/IGN OFF/OFF
	Philippines and Laotian models Walk away auto lock Models for other countries Walk away lock	Changes the settings for the automatic locking the doors when you walk away from the vehicle while carrying the keyless remote.	ON/OFF*¹
	Philippines and Laotian models Keyless lock answer back Models for other countries Keyless lock notification	LOCK/UNLOCK - The exterior lights flash. LOCK (2nd push) - The beeper sounds.	ON*¹/OFF
	Security relock timer	Changes the time it takes for the doors to relock and the security system to set after you unlock the vehicle without opening any door.	90sec/60sec/30sec*¹



*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Maintenance reset*	—	Resets the oil monitor system information when you have performed the maintenance service.	Cancel/Reset
Default all	—	Cancels customized changes you have made or restores them to their default setting.	Philippines and Laotian models Cancel/Set Models for other countries Cancel/OK

■ Example of customization settings

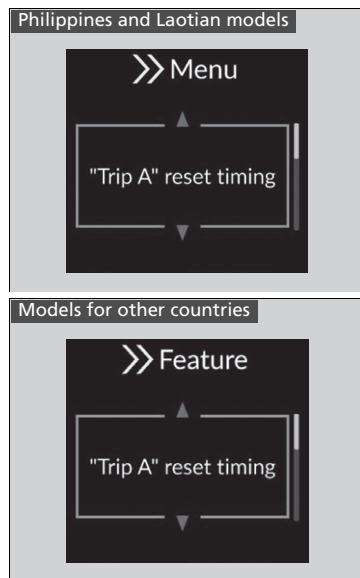
The steps for changing the **"Trip A" reset timing** setting to **When fully refueled** are shown below. The default setting for **"Trip A" reset timing** is **Manually reset***1/**Manual reset***2.



1. Press the  (home) button and roll the left selector wheel to select , then press the left selector wheel.
2. Roll the left selector wheel until **Meter setup** appears on the display.
3. Press the left selector wheel.

*1: Philippines and Laotian models

*2: Models for other countries

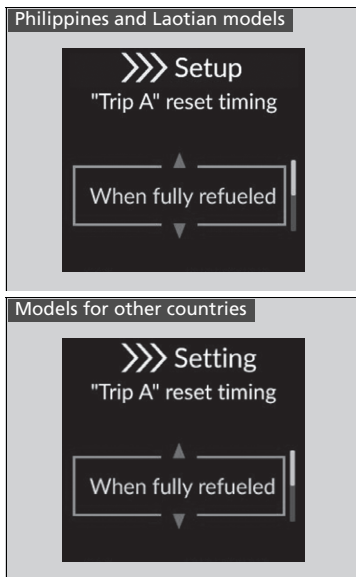


4. Roll the left selector wheel until **"Trip A"** **reset timing** appears on the display, then press the left selector wheel.

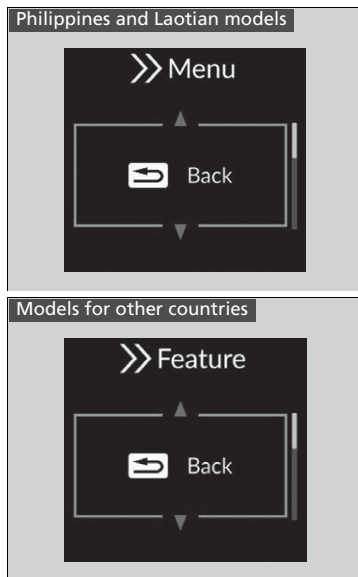
- The display switches to the customization setup screen, where you can select **When fully refueled, IGN OFF^{*1}/When ignition is turned OFF^{*2}, Manually reset^{*1}/Manual reset^{*2}**, or **Back**.

*1 : Philippines and Laotian models

*2 : Models for other countries



5. Roll the left selector wheel and select **When Fully Refueled**, then press the left selector wheel.
 - The **Selected** appears, then the display returns to the customization menu screen.



6. Roll the left selector wheel until **Back** appears on the display, then press the left selector wheel.
7. Repeat Step 6 until you return to the normal screen.

Driver Information Interface (B-type Meter)

The driver information interface shows information such as the estimated travelable distance and fuel economy of the vehicle. It also displays messages such as warnings and other helpful information.


When a warning message displays, please check the message and contact a dealer to have the vehicle inspected if necessary. Please refer to the pages below if the

Engine Oil Pressure Low or **Engine Temperature Too Hot** message is displayed.


➤ **If the Engine Oil Pressure Low Warning Appears** P. 422

➤ **Overheating** P. 417

Switching the Display

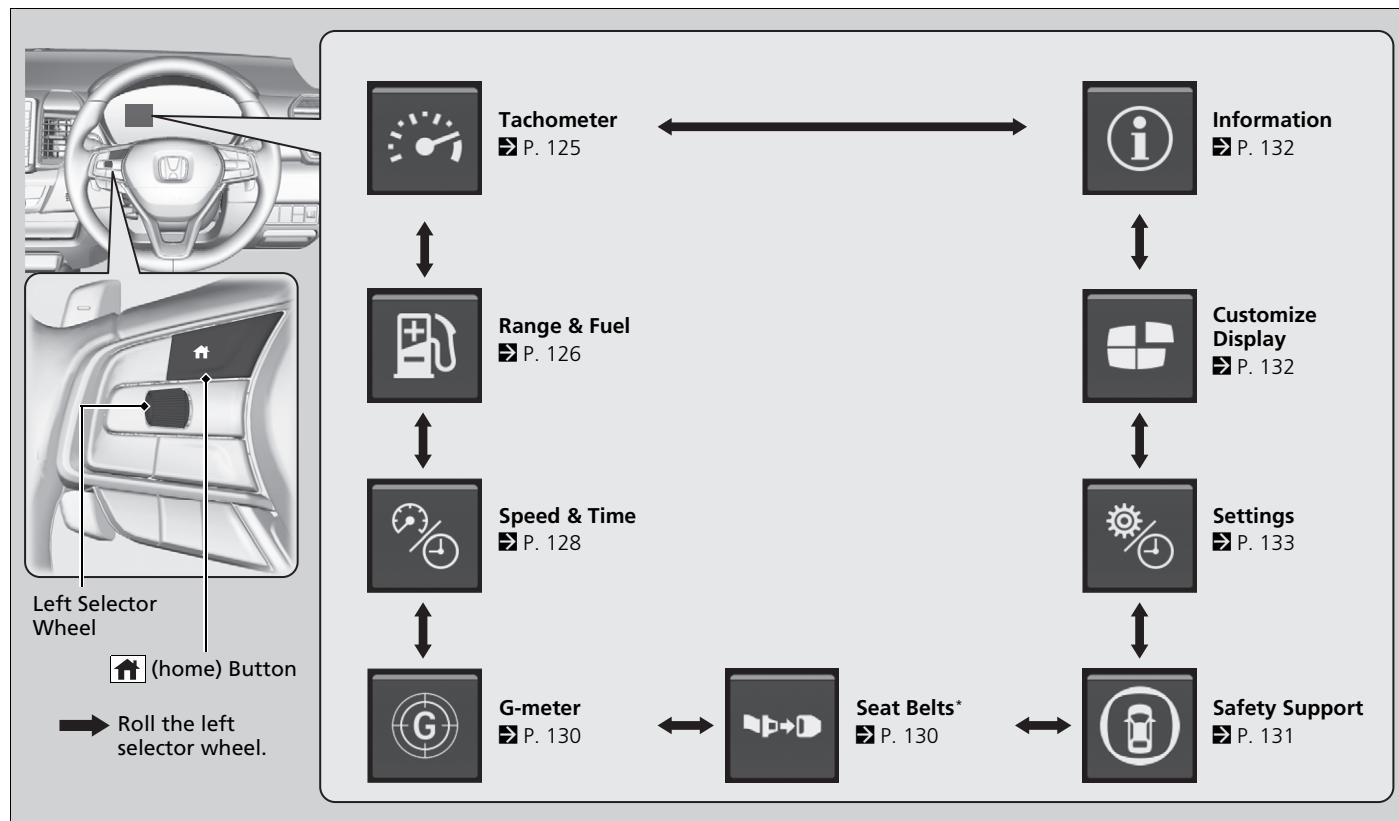
Press the  (home) button, then roll the left selector wheel to scroll to the content you want to see. Press the left selector wheel to see detailed information.

Switching the Display

To go back to the home screen, press the  (home) button.

You can add or delete the meter contents.

➤ **Customize Display** P. 132



■ Tachometer

Shows the number of engine revolutions per minute and other contents will hide.

» Tachometer

The tachometer can be turned on and off using **Settings**.

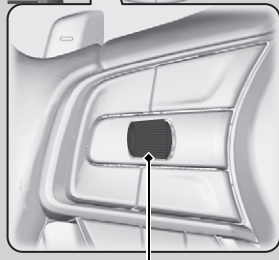
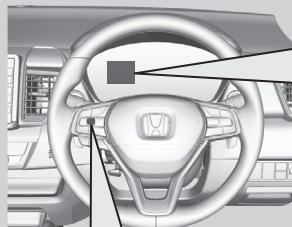
➤ **Settings** P. 133

Even if you have turned off the tachometer using **Settings**, if **Tachometer** is selected on the driver information interface, it will change to a tachometer-only display.

➤ **Switching the Display** P. 123

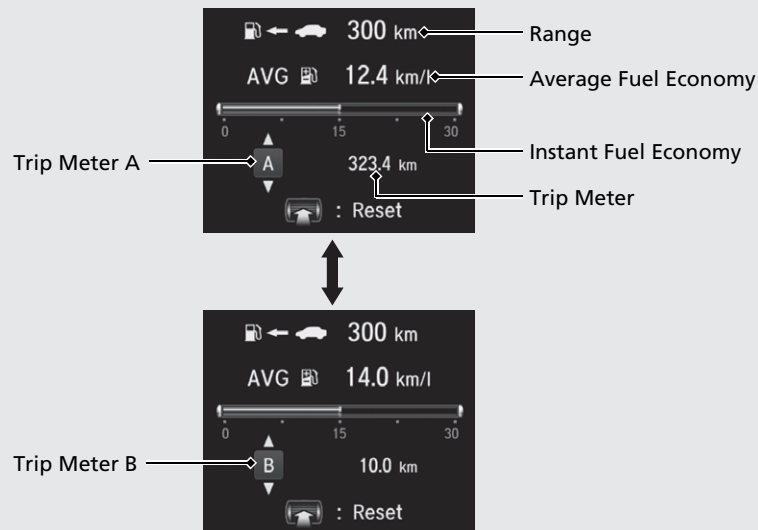
■ Range/Fuel/Trip Meter

Roll the left selector wheel to switch between trip meter A and trip meter B.



Left Selector Wheel

➡ Roll the left selector wheel.



■ Trip meter

Shows the total number of kilometres driven since the last reset. Meters A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

Resetting a trip meter

To reset the trip meter, display it, press the left selector wheel, and then select **Reset**.

- The trip meter is reset to **0.0**.

■ Average fuel economy

Shows the estimated average fuel economy of each trip meter in km/l. The display is updated at set intervals. When a trip meter is reset, the average fuel economy is also reset.

■ Instant fuel economy

Shows the instant fuel economy as a bar graph in km/l.

■ Range

Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining fuel. This estimated distance is based on the vehicle's current fuel economy.

⌘ Average fuel economy

You can change when to reset the average fuel economy.

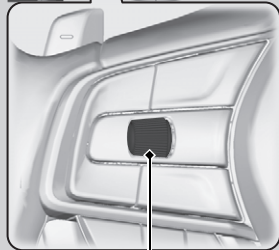
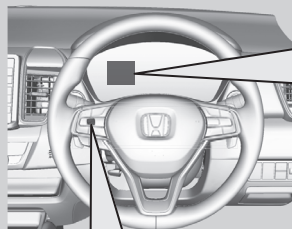
➡ **Settings** P. 133

⌘ Range

The driving range displayed is only an estimate and may differ from the actual distance the vehicle can travel.

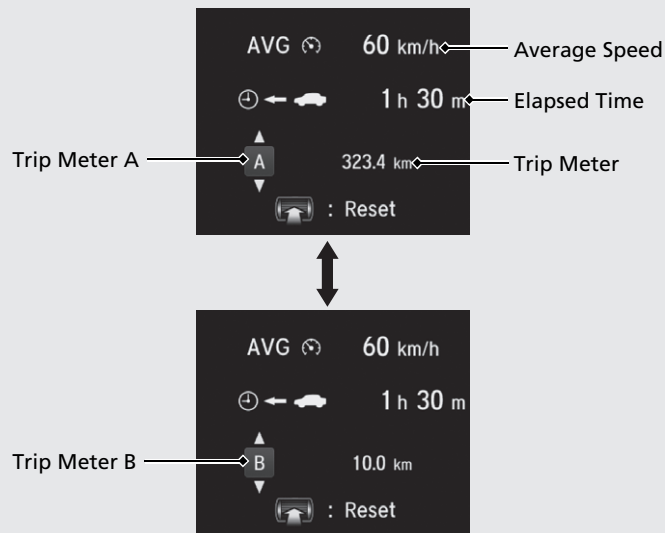
■ Speed/Time/Trip Meter

Roll the left selector wheel to switch between trip meter A and trip meter B.



Left Selector Wheel

➡ Roll the left selector wheel.



■ Trip meter

🔧 Trip meter P. 127

■ Elapsed Time

Shows the time elapsed since the last time Trip A or Trip B was reset.

■ Average Speed

Shows the average speed in km/h since the last time Trip A or Trip B was reset.

⌘ Elapsed Time

You can change when to reset the elapsed time.

🔧 Settings P. 133

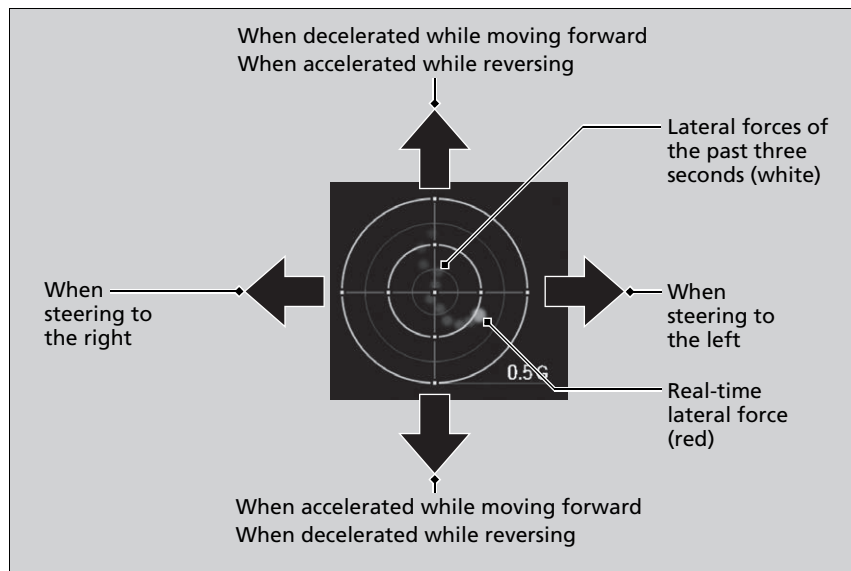
⌘ Average Speed

You can change when to reset the average speed.

🔧 Settings P. 133

■ G-meter

Displays the strength (G) and direction of the load that is applied to the vehicle during driving.



■ Seat Belts*

Occurs, under specified conditions, when seat belts are latched or unlatched.

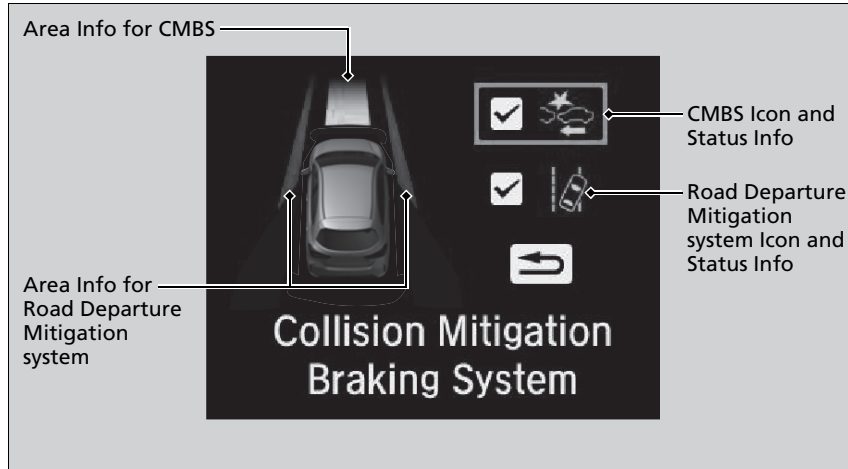
➤ **Seat Belt Reminder** P. 38

Safety Support

Indicates the status of the Road Departure Mitigation system and CMBS, such as On, Off, or Failure, by colour and letters.

The following colours indicate the status of any of the above-mentioned systems:

- Green: The system is on.
- Grey: The system is off.
- Amber: There is a problem with the system.



Safety Support

If a system is indicated by the colour amber, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

To turn each system on or off, first rotate the left selector wheel to switch displays. From the next display, you can select which system to turn on or off.

► **Road Departure Mitigation system On and Off** P. 269

► **CMBS On and Off** P. 256

You can also confirm the status of each function by the colour of the indicator.

► **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Amber)** P. 96

► **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Grey)*** P. 96

► **Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Amber)** P. 97

► **Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Grey)*** P. 97

► **Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF Indicator*** P. 97

► **Safety Support Indicator (Amber)** P. 98

► **Safety Support Indicator (Green/Grey)** P. 99

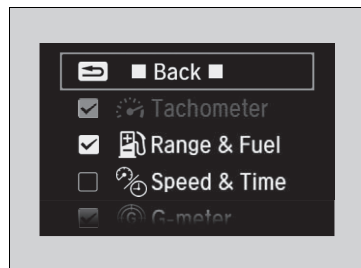
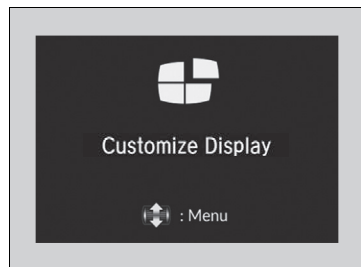
* Not available on all models

■ Customize Display

Change the settings to your liking.

■ Arrange content

You can choose which icons to display on the home screen.



1. Roll the left selector wheel to scroll to select **Customize Display**, then press the left selector wheel.
2. Roll the left selector wheel.
3. Roll the left selector wheel to scroll between icons, then press the left selector wheel to check or uncheck them.

■ Information

You can check if there are any active warning messages.

» Customize Display

Icons that are grey cannot be removed from the home screen.

Continuously variable transmission models

When you customize settings, shift to **P**.

Manual transmission models

When you customize settings, set the parking brake.



» Information

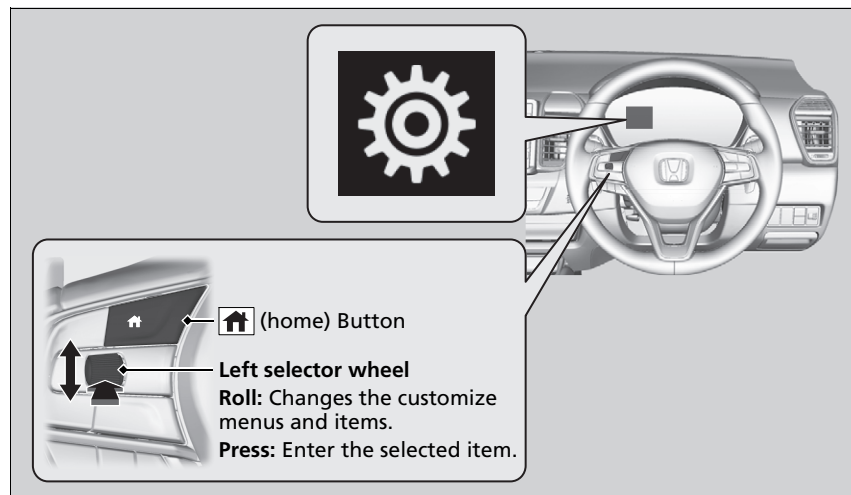
If there are multiple warnings or informations, you can roll the left selector wheel to see other warnings.

Settings

Use the driver information interface to customize certain features.

How to customize

Select the  screen by pressing the  (home) button and rolling the left selector wheel while the power mode is in ON, and the vehicle is at a complete stop. Press the left selector wheel.




Settings

To customize other features, roll the left selector wheel.

► **List of customizable options** P. 134

► **Example of customization settings** P. 138

Continuously variable transmission models

When you customize settings, shift to .

Manual transmission models

When you customize settings, set the parking brake.

■ List of customizable options

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Clock Setup	Clock Adjustment	Adjusts the time. ▶ Adjusting the Clock P. 142	—
	Clock Display	Sets time display 24 hour, 12 hour or off.	24h/12h^{*1}/OFF
Driver Assist System Setup	Preceding Vehicle Proximity Warning Distance	Changes the distance at which Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) alerts.	Far/Normal^{*1}/Near
	ACC Vehicle Ahead Detected Beep	Causes the system to beep when a vehicle is detected or when the vehicle is out of ACC range.	ON/OFF^{*1}
	Road Departure Mitigation Setting	Changes the setting for the Road Departure Mitigation system.	Early/Normal^{*1}/Delayed/Warning Only
	Lane Keep Assist Beep	Causes the system to beep when the LKAS is suspended.	ON/OFF^{*1}
	Lead Car Departure Notification System	Changes the setting for the lead car departure notification system.	Normal^{*1}/Early/OFF

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Meter Setup	Adjust Outside Temp. Display	Adjusts the temperature reading by a few degrees.	-3°C ~ ±0°C*¹ ~ +3°C
	“Trip A” Reset Timing	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter A, average fuel economy A, average speed A, and elapsed time A.	When Fully Refueled/When Ignition Is Turned OFF/Manual Reset*¹
	“Trip B” Reset Timing	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter B, average fuel economy B, average speed B, and elapsed time B.	When Fully Refueled/When Ignition Is Turned OFF/Manual Reset*¹
	Alarm Volume Control	Changes the alarm volume, such as buzzers, warnings, turn signal sound, and so on.	Max/Mid*¹/Min
	Rear Seat Reminder	Turns the Rear Seat Reminder feature on and off.	ON*¹/OFF
	Tachometer	Selects whether the tachometer is displayed on the driver information interface.	ON*¹/OFF

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Keyless Access Setup	Keyless Access Beep Volume	Changes the beep tone that sounds when you have a keyless remote and grab a front door handle.	High ^{*1} /Low
	Keyless Access Beep	Sets the beeper sound or not when you grab either front door handle.	ON ^{*1} /OFF
	Remote Start System ON/OFF [*]	Turns the remote engine start feature on and off.	ON ^{*1} /OFF
Lighting Setup	Auto High-Beam	Turns the auto high-beam on and off.	ON ^{*1} /OFF
	Interior Light Dimmer Duration	Changes the length of time the interior lights stay on after you close the doors.	60sec/30sec ^{*1} /15sec
	Headlight Auto OFF Timer	Changes the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door.	60sec/30sec/15sec ^{*1} /0sec
	Instrument Illumination Sensitivity	Changes the sensitivity of the brightness of the instrument panel when the headlight switch is in the AUTO position.	Max/High/Mid ^{*1} /Low/Min
	Headlight Integration With Wipers	Changes the settings for the wiper operation when the headlights automatically come on while the headlight switch is in the AUTO position.	ON ^{*1} /OFF

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Door Setup	Auto Door Lock	Changes the setting for when the doors and the tailgate automatically lock.	With Vehicle Speed^{*1}/Shift From P^{*2}/OFF
	Auto Door Unlock	Changes the setting for when the doors and the tailgate automatically unlock.	Shift To P^{*2}, ^{*3}/IGN OFF^{*4}/OFF
	Walk Away Lock	Changes the settings for the automatic locking the doors when you walk away from the vehicle while carrying the keyless remote.	ON/OFF^{*1}
	Keyless Lock Notification	LOCK/UNLOCK- The exterior lights flash. LOCK (2nd push)- The beeper sounds.	ON^{*1}/OFF
	Security Relock Timer	Changes the time it takes for the doors to relock and the security system to set after you unlock the vehicle without opening any door.	90sec/60sec/30sec^{*1}
Default All	—	Cancels customized changes you have made or restores them to their default setting.	Cancel/OK

*1:Default Setting

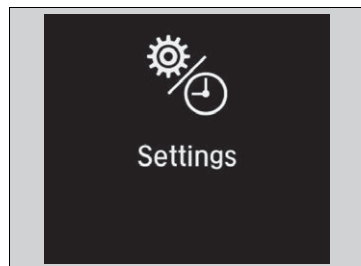
*2:Continuously variable transmission models



*3:Default Setting for continuously variable transmission

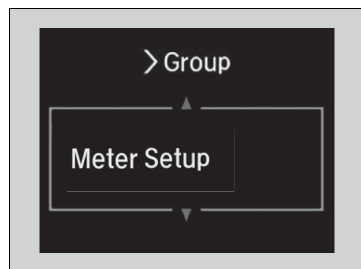
*4:Default Setting for manual transmission

■ Example of customization settings

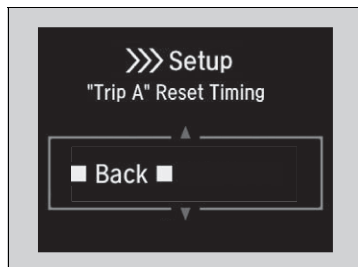
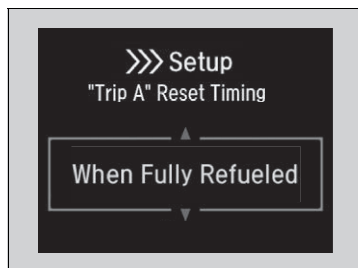
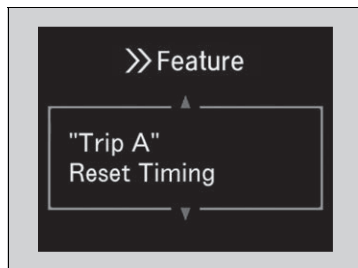
The steps for changing the **"Trip A" Reset Timing** setting to **When Fully Refueled** are shown below. The default setting for **"Trip A" Reset Timing** is **Manual Reset**.



1. Press the  (home) button and roll the left selector wheel to select , then press the left selector wheel.



2. Roll the left selector wheel until **Meter Setup** appears on the display.
3. Press the left selector wheel.



4. Roll the left selector wheel until **"Trip A"** **Reset Timing** appears on the display, then press the left selector wheel.

► The display switches to the customization setup screen, where you can select **When Fully Refueled, When Ignition Is Turned OFF, Manual Reset, or Back**.

5. Roll the left selector wheel and select **When Fully Refueled**, then press the left selector wheel.

► The display will return to the customization menu screen.

6. Roll the left selector wheel until **Back** appears on the display, then press the left selector wheel.

7. Repeat Step 6 until you return to the normal screen.

Controls

This chapter explains how to operate the various controls necessary for driving.

Clock	142
Locking and Unlocking the Doors	
Key	145
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside	147
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside	154
Childproof Door Locks	155
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking	156
Tailgate	157
Security System	
Immobilizer System	159
Security System Alarm	160
Windows	161

Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel	
ENGINE START/STOP Button	163
Turn Signals	166
Light Switches	167
Fog Lights*	170
Headlight Adjuster*	171
Auto High-Beam	172
Daytime Running Lights	175
Wipers and Washers	176
Brightness Control	178
Rear Demister Button	179
Adjusting the Steering Wheel	180

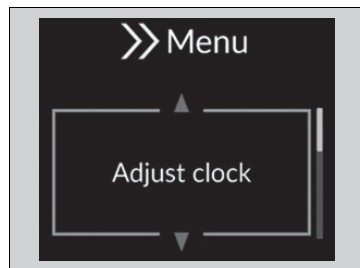
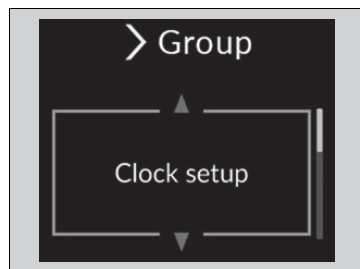
Mirrors	
Interior Rearview Mirror	181
Power Door Mirrors	182
Seats	
Front Seats	183
Rear Seats	186
Armrest	195
Interior Convenience Items	196
Cooling System*	
Using Vents and A/C	206
Climate Control System*	
Using Automatic Climate Control	209
Automatic Climate Control Sensors ...	213

* Not available on all models

Adjusting the Clock

You can adjust the time in the clock display when the power mode is in ON.

■ Adjusting the Time



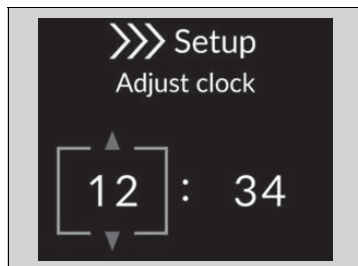
Models with A-type meter


1. Select the **Settings** screen.
 ➤ **Settings** P. 110, 133
2. Roll the left selector wheel to select **Clock setup**, then push the left selector wheel.
3. Roll the left selector wheel until **Adjust clock** appears on the display.
4. Push the left selector wheel.

➤ Adjusting the Time

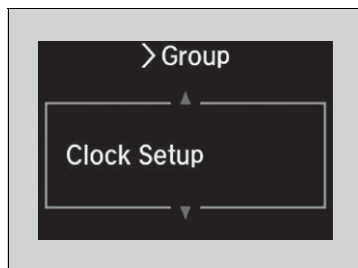
You can customize the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock.


➤ **Settings** P. 110, 133

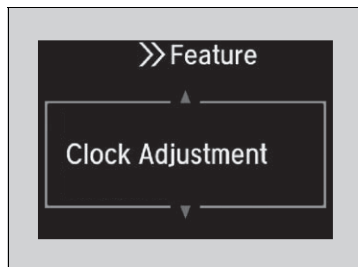


5. Roll the left selector wheel to change hour, then push the left selector wheel.
6. Roll the left selector wheel to change minute, then push the left selector wheel.
7. Press the  button to return to the normal screen.

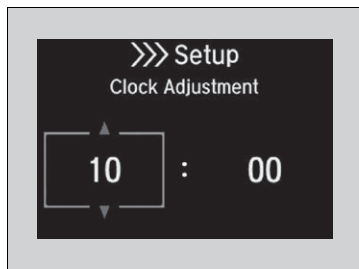
Models with B-type meter




1. Select the **Settings** screen.
 **Settings** P. 133
2. Roll the left selector wheel to select **Clock Setup**, then push the left selector wheel.



3. Roll the left selector wheel until **Clock Adjustment** appears on the display.
4. Push the left selector wheel.

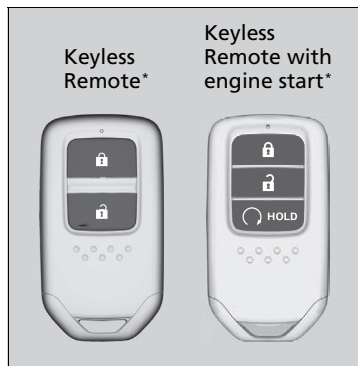


5. Roll the left selector wheel to change hour, then push the left selector wheel.
6. Roll the left selector wheel to change minute, then push the left selector wheel.
7. Press the  button to return to the normal screen.

Locking and Unlocking the Doors

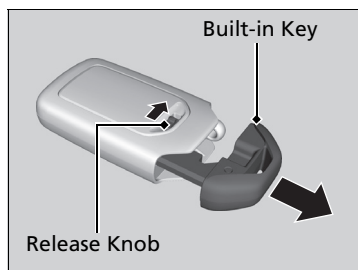
Key

This vehicle comes with the following keys:



Use the keys to start and stop the engine, lock and unlock all the doors, and open the tailgate.

Built-in Key



The built-in key can be used to lock/unlock the doors when the keyless remote battery becomes weak and the power door lock/unlock operation is disabled. To remove the built-in key, slide the release knob and then pull out the key. To reinstall the built-in key, push the built-in key into the keyless remote until it clicks.

Key

All the keys have an immobilizer system. The immobilizer system helps to protect against vehicle theft.

➔ **Immobilizer System** P. 159

Follow the advice below to prevent damage to the keys:

- Do not leave the keys in direct sunlight, or in locations with high temperature or high humidity.
- Do not drop the keys or set heavy objects on them.
- Keep the keys away from liquids, dust, and sand.
- Do not take the keys apart except to replace the battery.

If the circuits in the keys are damaged, the engine may not start, and the remote transmitter may not work.

If the keys do not work properly, have them inspected by a dealer.

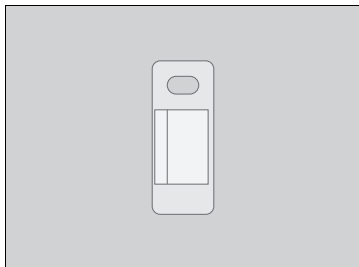
Models with remote engine start

You can remotely start the engine using the remote engine start.

➔ **Remote Engine Start*** P. 224

* Not available on all models

■ Key Number Tag



Contains a number that you will need if you purchase a replacement key.

Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength

The vehicle transmits radio waves to locate the keyless remote to start the engine and lock and unlock all the doors and tailgate.

In the following cases, starting the engine and locking/unlocking the doors and tailgate may be inhibited, or operation may be unstable:

- Strong radio waves are being transmitted by nearby equipment.
- You are carrying the keyless remote together with telecommunications equipment, laptop computers, mobile phones, or wireless devices.
- A metallic object is touching or covering the keyless remote.

▣ Key Number Tag

Keep the key number tag separate from the key in a safe place outside of your vehicle. If you wish to purchase an additional key, contact a dealer.

If you lose your key and you cannot start the engine, contact a dealer.

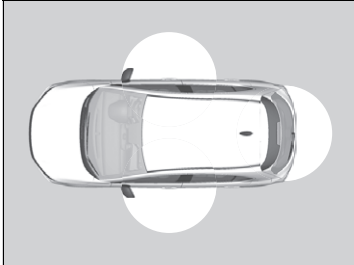
▣ Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength

Communication between the keyless remote and the vehicle consumes the keyless remote's battery. Battery life is about two years, but this varies depending on regularity of use. The battery is consumed whenever the keyless remote is receiving strong radio waves. Avoid placing it near electrical appliances such as televisions and personal computers.

It is possible to reduce battery consumption by turning off radio wave reception. When you hold down the lock and unlock buttons at the same time for approximately three seconds, the LED will blink twice and radio wave reception will turn off. If you press any button on the keyless remote once, it will begin receiving radio waves again.

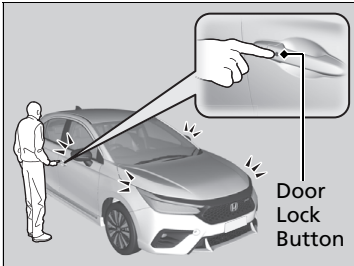
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

■ Using the Keyless Access System



When you carry the keyless remote, you can lock/unlock the doors and open the tailgate.

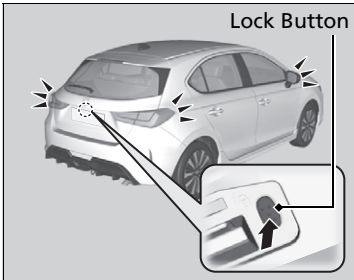
You can lock/unlock the doors and tailgate within a radius of about 80 cm from the outside door handle or tailgate outer handle.



■ Locking the doors and tailgate

Press the door lock button on the front door or the tailgate.

- Some exterior lights flash; the beeper sounds; all the doors and the tailgate lock; and the security system sets.



▣ Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

If the interior light switch is in the door activated position, the interior light comes on when you unlock the doors.

No doors opened: The light fades out after 30 seconds.

Doors relocked with the remote: The light goes off immediately.

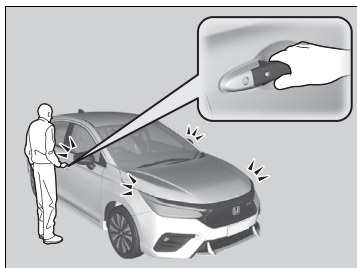
► Interior Lights P. 196

▣ Using the Keyless Access System

If you do not open a door or the tailgate within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the keyless access system, the doors and tailgate will automatically relock.

You can lock or unlock doors using the keyless access system only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.

The keyless access system will not lock the vehicle when a door or the tailgate is open.



■ Unlocking the doors and tailgate

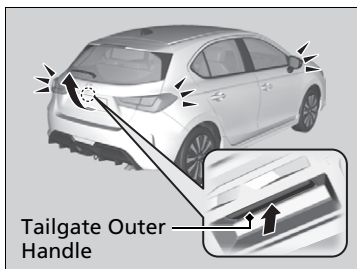
Grab the front door handle:

- All the doors and the tailgate unlock.
- Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.

Press the tailgate outer handle.

- The tailgate and all doors unlock.
- Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.

► **Opening/Closing the Tailgate** P. 158

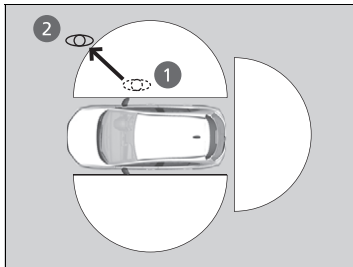
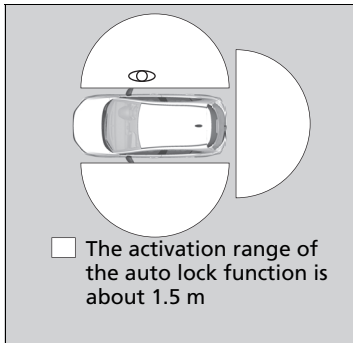


► Using the Keyless Access System

- Do not leave the keyless remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote, you can lock/unlock the doors and the tailgate while someone else with the remote is within range.
- The door may be unlocked if the door handle is covered with water in heavy rain or in a car wash if the keyless remote is within range.
- If you grip a front door handle wearing gloves, the door sensor may be slow to respond or may not respond by unlocking the doors.
- After locking the door, you have up to 2 seconds during which you can pull the door handle to confirm whether the door is locked. If you need to unlock the door immediately after locking it, wait at least 2 seconds before gripping the handle, otherwise the door will not unlock.
- The door may not open if you pull it immediately after gripping the door handle. Grip the handle again and confirm that the door is unlocked before pulling the handle.
- Even within the 80 cm radius, you may not be able to lock/unlock the doors and the tailgate with the keyless remote if it is above or below the outside handle.
- The keyless remote may not operate if it is too close to the door, door glass, and tailgate.

The beep settings can be customized using the driver information interface.

► **Settings** P. 110, 133



■ Locking the doors and tailgate (Walk away auto lock)

When you walk away from the vehicle with all doors and tailgate closed while carrying the keyless remote, the doors and tailgate will automatically lock.

The auto lock function activates when all doors and tailgate are closed, and the keyless remote is within about 1.5 m radius of the outside door handle or tailgate outer handle. Exit the vehicle while carrying the keyless remote and close the door(s).

1. While within about 1.5 m radius of the vehicle.

► The beeper sounds; the auto lock function will be activated.

2. Carry the keyless remote beyond about 1.5 m from the vehicle and remain outside this range for 2 or more seconds.

► Some exterior lights flash; the beeper sounds; all doors and tailgate will then lock.

▣ Locking the doors and tailgate (Walk away auto lock)

The auto lock function is set to OFF as the factory default setting. The auto lock function can be set to ON using the driver information interface.

If you set the auto lock function to ON using the driver information interface, only the remote transmitter that was used to unlock the driver's door prior to the setting change can activate auto lock.

► **Settings** P. 110, 133

After the auto lock function has been activated, when you stay within the locking/unlocking operation range, the indicator on the keyless remote will continue to flash until the doors are locked.

When you stay beside the vehicle within the operation range, the doors will automatically lock approximately 30 seconds after the auto lock function activating beeper sounds.

When you open a door after the auto lock function activating beeper sounds, the auto lock function will be cancelled.

Under the following circumstances, the auto lock function will not activate:

- The keyless remote is inside the vehicle.
 - The beeper will not sound.
- The keyless remote is taken out of its operational range before all the doors are closed.
 - The beeper will sound.

To temporarily deactivate the function:

1. Set the power mode to OFF.
2. Open the driver's door.
3. Using the master door lock switch, operate the lock as follows:
Lock→Unlock→Lock→Unlock.
► The beeper sounds, and the function is deactivated.

To restore the function:

- Set the power mode to ON.
- Lock the vehicle without using the auto lock function.
- With the keyless remote on you, move out of the auto lock function operation range.
- Open any door.

► Locking the doors and tailgate (Walk away auto lock)

The auto lock function does not operate when any of the following conditions are met.

- The keyless remote is inside the vehicle.
- A door or the bonnet is not closed.
- The power mode is set to any mode other than OFF.
- The keyless remote is not located within a radius of about 1.5 m from the vehicle when you get out of the vehicle and close the doors.

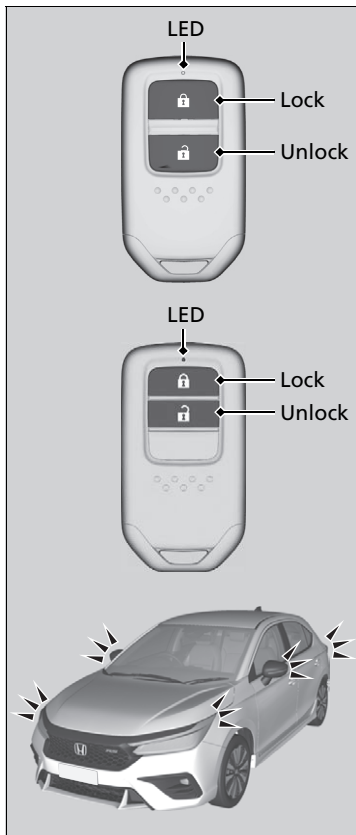
Auto lock function operation stop beeper

After the auto lock function has been activated, the auto lock operation stop beeper sounds for approximately two seconds in the following cases.

- The keyless remote is put inside the vehicle through a window.
- You are located too close to the vehicle.
- The keyless remote is put inside the tailgate.

If the warning beeper sounds, check that you are carrying the keyless remote. Then, open/close a door and confirm the auto lock activation beeper sounds once.

■ Using the Remote Transmitter



■ Locking the doors and tailgate

Press the lock button.

Once:

- ▶ Some exterior lights flash, all the doors and tailgate lock, and the security system sets.

Twice (within five seconds after the first push):

- ▶ The beeper sounds and verifies the security system is set.

■ Unlocking the doors and tailgate

Press the unlock button.

- ▶ Some exterior lights flash twice, and all the doors and tailgate unlock.

✎ Using the Remote Transmitter

If you do not open a door or the tailgate within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the remote transmitter, the doors and tailgate will automatically relock.

You can change the relock timer setting.

✎ **Settings** P. 110, 133

You can lock or unlock doors using the remote transmitter only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.

The remote transmitter uses low-power signals, so the operating range may vary depending on the surroundings.

The remote will not lock the vehicle when a door or the tailgate is open.

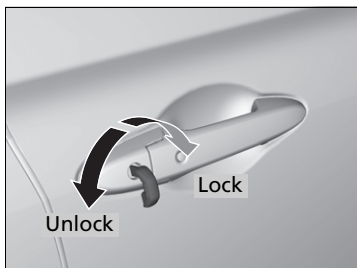
If the distance at which the remote transmitter works varies, the battery is probably low.

If the LED does not come on when you press a button, the battery is dead.

✎ **Replacing the Remote Battery** P. 387

■ Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

If the lock or unlock button of the keyless remote does not work, use the key instead.



Fully insert the key and turn it.

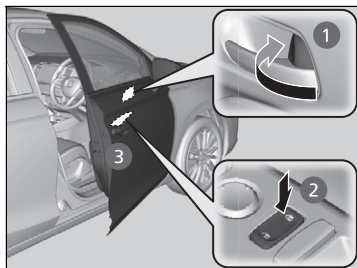
► Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

When you lock/unlock the driver's door with the key, all the other doors and tailgate lock/unlock at the same time.

If you unlock a door with the built-in key while the security system is activated, the alarm will go off.

■ Locking a Door Without Using a Key

If you do not have the key on you, or if for some reason you cannot lock a door using the key, you can lock the door without it.



■ Locking the driver's door

Push the lock tab forward **1** or push the master door lock switch in the lock direction **2**, then pull and hold the outside door handle **3**. Close the door, then release the handle.

■ Locking the passenger's doors

Push the lock tab forward and close the door.

■ Lockout prevention system

The doors and the tailgate cannot be locked when the keyless remote is inside the vehicle.

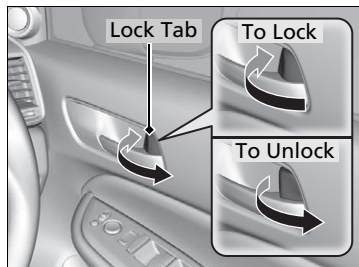
▣ Locking a Door Without Using a Key

When you lock the driver's door, all the other doors and tailgate lock at the same time.

Before locking a door, make sure that the key is not inside the vehicle.

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside

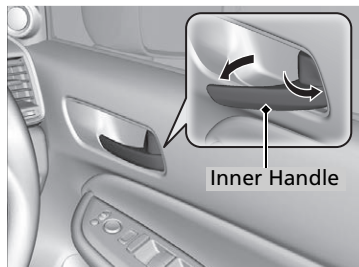
■ Using the Lock Tab



■ **Locking a door**
Push the lock tab forward.

■ **Unlocking a door**
Pull the lock tab rearward.

■ Unlocking Using the Driver's Door Inner Handle



Pull the driver's door inner handle.
► The door unlocks and opens in one motion.

►► Using the Lock Tab

When you lock/unlock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, all the other doors and the tailgate lock/unlock at the same time.

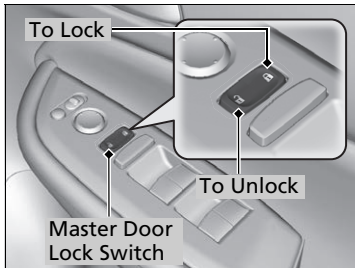
►► Unlocking Using the Driver's Door Inner Handle

The driver's door inner handle are designed to allow the driver to open the door in one motion. However, this feature requires that the driver never pull the door inner handle while the vehicle is in motion.

Children should always ride in a rear seat where childproof door locks are provided.

► **Childproof Door Locks** P. 155

■ Using the Master Door Lock Switch

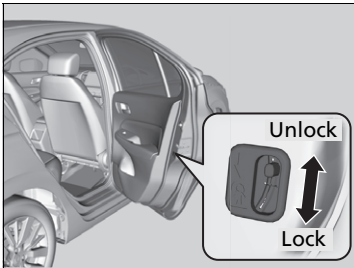


Press the master door lock switch in as shown to lock or unlock all the doors and the tailgate.

Childproof Door Locks

The childproof door locks prevent the rear doors from being opened from the inside regardless of the position of the lock tab.

■ Setting the Childproof Door Locks



Slide the lever in the rear door to the lock position, and close the door.

■ When opening the door

Open the door using the outside door handle.

► Using the Master Door Lock Switch

When you lock/unlock the driver's door using the master door lock switch, all the other doors and the tailgate lock/unlock at the same time.

► Childproof Door Locks

To open the door from the inside when the childproof door lock is on, put the lock tab in the unlock position, lower the rear window, put your hand out of the window, and pull the outside door handle.

Auto Door Locking/Unlocking

Your vehicle locks or unlocks all doors automatically when a certain condition is met.

■ Auto Door Locking

■ Drive lock mode

All doors lock when the vehicle's speed reaches about 15 km/h.

■ Auto Door Unlocking

Continuously variable transmission models

■ Park unlock mode

All doors unlock when the transmission is put into **P** with the brake pedal depressed.

Manual transmission models

■ Power mode unlock mode

All door unlock when the power mode is out of ON.

» Auto Door Locking/Unlocking

You can turn off or change to another auto door locking/unlocking setting using the driver information interface.

» **Settings** P. 110, 133

Precautions for Opening/Closing the Tailgate

Always make sure individuals and objects are clear of the tailgate before opening or closing it.

- Open the tailgate all the way.
 - ▶ If it is not fully opened, the tailgate may begin to close under its own weight.
- Be careful when it is windy. The wind may cause the tailgate to close.

Keep the tailgate closed while driving to:

- ▶ Avoid possible damage.
- ▶ Prevent exhaust gas from leaking into the vehicle.

🚫 **Exhaust Gas Hazard** P. 80

⚠️ Precautions for Opening/Closing the Tailgate

⚠️ WARNING

Anyone caught in the path of a tailgate that is being opened or closed can be seriously injured.

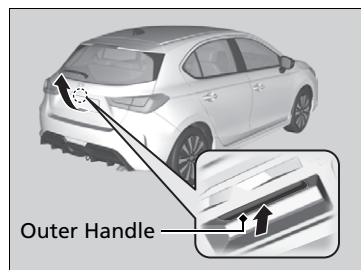
Make sure that all people are clear of the tailgate before opening or closing it.

Be careful not to hit your head on the tailgate or to put your hands between the tailgate and the luggage area when closing the tailgate.

When you are storing or picking up luggage from the luggage area while the engine is idling, do not stand in front of the exhaust pipe. You may get burned.

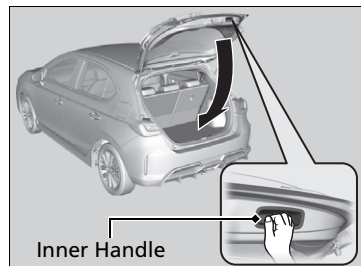
Do not allow any passenger in the luggage space. They may get hurt during hard braking, a sudden acceleration, or a crash.

Opening/Closing the Tailgate



When all the doors are unlocked, the tailgate is unlocked. Press the tailgate outer handle and lift open the tailgate.

If you are carrying the keyless remote, you do not have to unlock the tailgate before opening it.



To close the tailgate, grab the inner handle, pull the tailgate down, and push it closed from outside.

► Opening/Closing the Tailgate

- Do not leave the keyless remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote, you can unlock the tailgate while someone else with the remote is within range.

Immobilizer System

This system prevents a key that has not been pre-registered from starting the engine.

Pay attention to the following when pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button:

- Do not allow objects that emit strong radio waves near the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.
- Make sure the key is not covered by or touching a metal object.
- Do not bring a key from another vehicle's immobilizer system near the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.
- Do not put the key near magnetic items. Electronic devices, such as televisions and audio systems, emit strong magnetic fields. Note that even a key chain can become magnetic.

Immobilizer System

NOTICE

Leaving the key in the vehicle can result in theft or accidental movement of the vehicle. Always take the key with you whenever you leave the vehicle unattended.

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

If the system repeatedly does not recognise the coding of your key, contact a dealer. If you have lost your key and cannot start your vehicle, contact a dealer.

Security System Alarm

The security system alarm activates when the tailgate, bonnet, or doors are forcibly opened. The alarm does not activate if the tailgate or doors are opened with the remote transmitter or keyless access system.

■ When the security system alarm activates

The horn sounds intermittently, and some exterior lights flash.

■ To deactivate the security system alarm

Unlock the vehicle using the remote transmitter or keyless access system, or set the power mode to ON. The system, along with the horn and flashing lights, is deactivated.

■ Setting the security system alarm

The security system alarm automatically sets when the following conditions have been met:

- The power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF.
- The bonnet is closed.
- All doors and the tailgate are locked from outside with the key, remote transmitter, or keyless access system.

■ When the security system alarm sets

The security system alarm indicator in the instrument panel blinks and the blinking interval changes after about 15 seconds.

■ To cancel the security system alarm

The security system alarm is cancelled when the vehicle is unlocked using the remote transmitter or keyless access system, or when the power mode is set to ON. The security system alarm indicator goes off at the same time.

⌘ Security System Alarm

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

The security system alarm will continue for approximately 5 minutes before the security system deactivates.

The system will go through ten 30-second cycles, during which the horn will sound and an emergency indicator will flash.

Depending on circumstances, the security system may continue operating for more than 5 minutes.

Do not set the security system alarm when someone is in the vehicle or a window is open. The system can accidentally activate when:

- Unlocking the door with the lock tab.
- Opening the bonnet with the bonnet release.

If the battery goes dead after you have set the security system alarm, the security alarm may go off once the battery is recharged or replaced.

If this occurs, deactivate the security system alarm by unlocking a door using the remote transmitter or keyless access system.

If you unlock a door with the built-in key while the security system is activated, the alarm will go off.

Opening/Closing the Power Windows

The power windows can be opened and closed when the power mode is in ON, using the switches on the doors.

The driver's side switches can be used to open and close all the windows. The power window lock button on the driver's side must be switched off to open and close the windows from anywhere other than the driver's seat.

When the power window lock button is pushed in, the indicator comes on and you can only operate the driver's window. Turn the power window lock button on if a child is in the vehicle.

Opening/Closing the Power Windows

WARNING

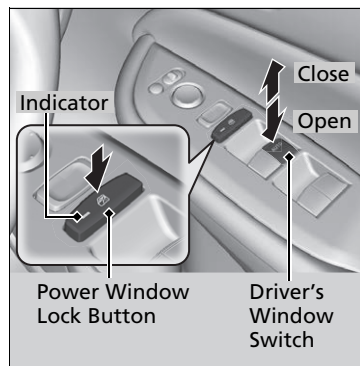
Closing a power window on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure your passengers are away from the windows before closing them.

WARNING: Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

The power windows can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF. Opening either front door cancels this function.

■ Opening/Closing the Windows with Auto-Open/Close Function



■ Manual operation

To open: Push the switch down lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

To close: Pull the switch up lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

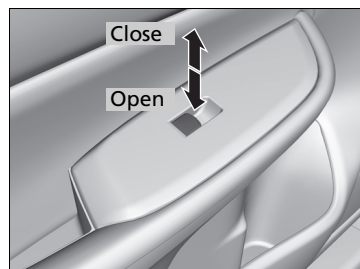
■ Automatic operation

To open: Push the switch down firmly.

To close: Pull the switch up firmly.

The window opens or closes completely. To stop the window at any time, push or pull the switch briefly.

■ Opening/Closing Windows without Auto-Open/Close Function



To open: Push the switch down.

To close: Pull the switch up.

Release the switch when the window reaches the desired position.

► Opening/Closing the Power Windows

Auto Reverse

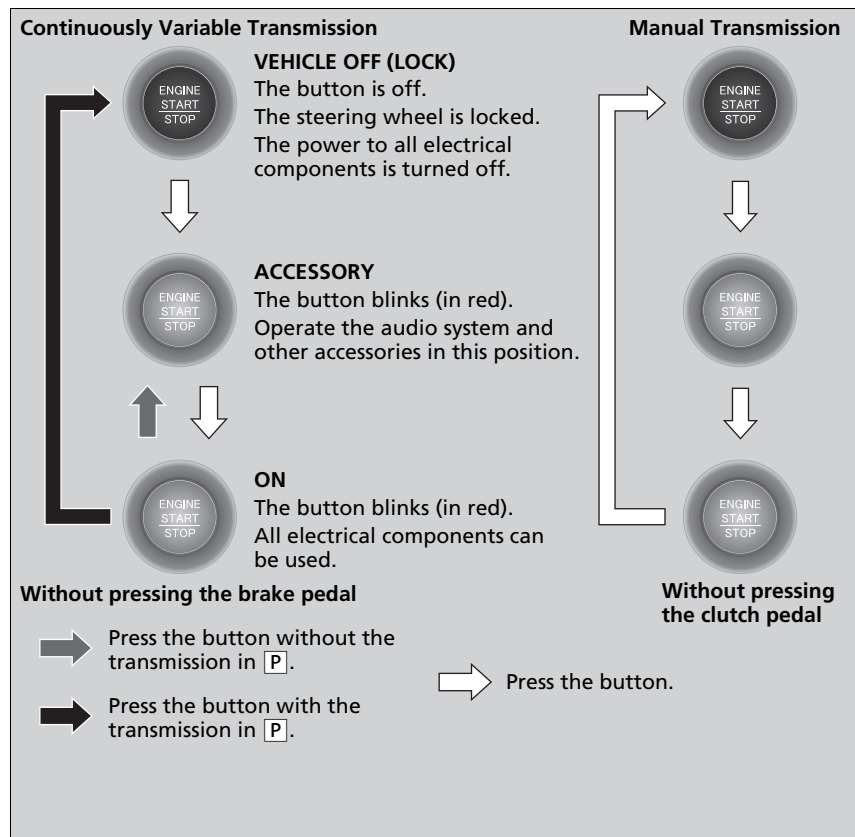
If a power window senses resistance when closing automatically, it will stop closing and reverse direction.

The driver's window auto reverse function is disabled when you continuously pull up the switch.

The auto reverse function stops sensing when the window is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes.

ENGINE START/STOP Button

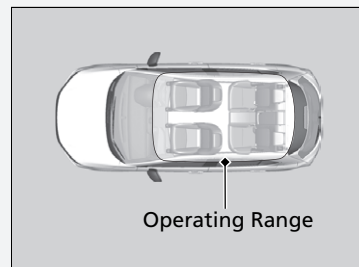
Changing the Power Mode



ENGINE START/STOP Button

ENGINE START/STOP Button Operating Range

You can start the engine when the keyless remote is inside the vehicle.



If the battery of the keyless remote is getting low, the engine may not start when you push the **ENGINE START/STOP** button. If the engine does not start, refer to the following link.

➤ If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak
P. 410

The engine may also run if the keyless remote is close to the door or window, even if it is outside the vehicle.

ON mode:

The **ENGINE START/STOP** button is on (in red), if the engine is running.

■ Automatic Power Off

If you leave the vehicle for 30 to 60 minutes with the transmission in **P** (continuously variable transmission) and the power mode in ACCESSORY, the vehicle automatically goes into the mode similar to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) to avoid draining the battery.

When in this mode:

The steering wheel does not lock. You cannot lock or unlock doors with the remote transmitter or the keyless access system.

Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button twice to switch the mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

■ Power Mode Reminder

If you open the driver's door when the power mode is set to ACCESSORY, a warning beep sounds.

⌘ ENGINE START/STOP Button

If the power mode does not change from VEHICLE OFF to ACCESSORY, press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button while moving the steering wheel left and right. The steering wheel will unlock, allowing the mode to change.

Do not leave the power mode in ACCESSORY or ON when you get out.

■ Keyless Remote Reminder

Models with A-type meter



Keyless remote not
detected

Models with B-type meter



Keyless Remote
Not Detected

When the power mode is set to any mode other than OFF and you remove the keyless remote from the vehicle and shut the door, an alarm will sound. If the alarm continues to sound, place the keyless remote in another location.

■ When the power mode is in ACCESSORY

The alarm will sound from outside the vehicle.

■ When the power mode is in ON

An alarm will sound both inside and outside the vehicle. In addition, a warning indicator will appear on the instrument panel.

⌘ Keyless Remote Reminder

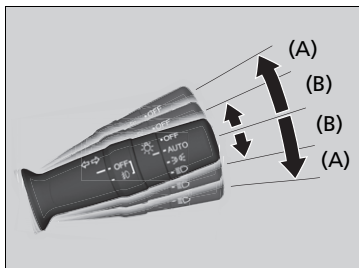
When the keyless remote is within the system's operational range, and the driver's door is closed, the warning function cancels.

If the keyless remote is taken out of the vehicle after the engine has been started, you can no longer change the **ENGINE START/STOP** button mode or restart the engine. Always make sure that the remote is in your vehicle when you operate the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

Removing the keyless remote from the vehicle through a window does not activate the warning buzzer.

Do not put the keyless remote on the dashboard or in the glove box. It may cause the warning buzzer to go off. Under some other conditions that can prevent the vehicle from locating the remote, the warning buzzer may also go off even if the remote is within the system's operational range.

Turn Signals



The turn signals can be used when the power mode is in ON.

■ (A): Turn signal

Push the lever up or down based on the direction you want to turn, and the turn signal will blink.

■ (B): One-touch turn signal

When you lightly push the lever up or down and release it, the turn signal will blink 3 times.

- If you lightly push the lever in the opposite direction while it is blinking, the blinking will stop.

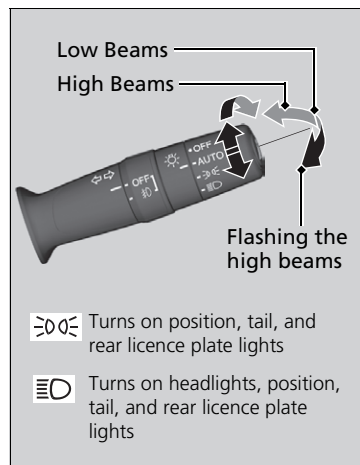
►► Turn Signals

The turn signal indicator on the instrument panel will blink when the external turn signal blinks.

► Indicators P. 84

Light Switches

Manual Operation



Rotating the light switch turns the lights on and off, regardless of the power mode setting.

■ High beams

Push the lever forward until you hear a click.

■ Low beams

When in high beams, pull the lever back to return to low beams.

■ Flashing the high beams

Pull the lever back, and release it.

■ Lights off

Turn the lever to **OFF** either when:

- The transmission is in **P** (continuously variable transmission).
- The parking brake is applied.

To turn the lights on again, turn the lever to OFF to cancel the lights off mode. Even if you do not cancel the lights off mode, the lights come on automatically when:

- The transmission is taken out of **P** (continuously variable transmission) and the parking brake is released.
- The vehicle starts to move.

Light Switches

If you leave the power mode in VEHICLE OFF while the lights are on, a chime sounds when the driver's door is opened.

When the lights are on, the lights on indicator in the instrument panel will be on.

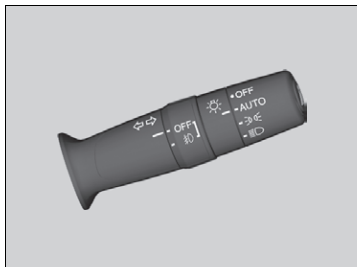
► Indicators P. 84

Do not leave the lights on when the engine is off because it will cause the battery to discharge.

Models without headlight adjuster

If you suspect that the headlights are not positioned properly, have the vehicle inspected by a dealer.

■ Automatic Operation (automatic lighting control)



Automatic lighting control can be used when the power mode is in ON.

When the light switch is in **AUTO**, the headlights and other exterior lights will switch on and off automatically depending on the ambient brightness.

The headlights come on when you unlock a door in dark areas with the headlight switch in **AUTO**.

- Once you lock the door, the headlights will go off.

■ Automatic Lighting Off Feature

The headlights, all other exterior lights, and the instrument panel lights turn off 15 seconds after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF, take the remote with you, and close the driver's door.

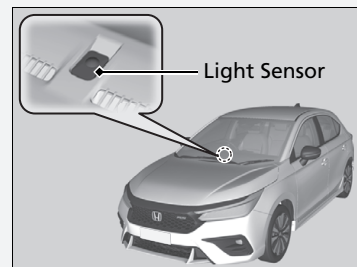
If you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF with the headlight switch on, but do not open the door, the lights turn off after 10 minutes (3 minutes, if the switch is in the **AUTO** position).

The lights turn on again when you unlock or open the driver's door. If you unlock the door, but do not open it within 15 seconds, the lights go off. If you open the driver's door, you will hear a reminder chime alerting you that the lights are on.

► Automatic Operation (automatic lighting control)

We recommend that you turn on the lights manually when driving at night, in a dense fog, or in dark areas such as long tunnels or parking facilities.

The light sensor is in the location shown below. Do not cover this light sensor with anything; otherwise, the automatic lighting system may not work properly.



► Automatic Lighting Off Feature

You can change the headlight auto off timer setting.

► **Settings** P. 110, 133

■ Headlight Integration with Wipers

The headlights automatically come on when the wipers are used several times within a certain number of intervals with the headlight switch in **AUTO**.

The headlights automatically go off a few minutes later if the wipers are stopped.

⌘ Headlight Integration with Wipers

This feature activates while the headlights are off in **AUTO**.

The instrument panel brightness does not change when the headlights come on.

At dark ambient light levels, the automatic lighting control feature turns on the headlights, regardless of the number of wiper sweeps.

You can turn the headlight integration with wipers function on and off.

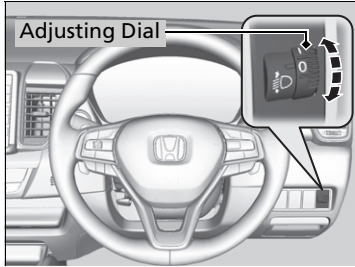
🔧 **Settings** P. 110, 133

Fog Lights*



Can be used when the position lights or the headlights are on.

Headlight Adjuster*



You can adjust the vertical angle of the low beam headlights.

Turn the adjustment dial to select an appropriate angle for the headlights.

The larger dial number indicates the lower angle.

■ To select the adjustment dial position

Refer to the below table for the appropriate dial position for your vehicle's riding and loading conditions.

Condition	Dial position
A driver	0
A driver and a front passenger	1
Five persons in the front and rear seats	2
Five persons in the front and rear seats and luggage in the luggage area, within the limits of maximum permissible axle weight and maximum permissible vehicle weight	3
A driver and luggage in the luggage area, within the limits of maximum permissible axle weight and maximum permissible vehicle weight	

* Not available on all models

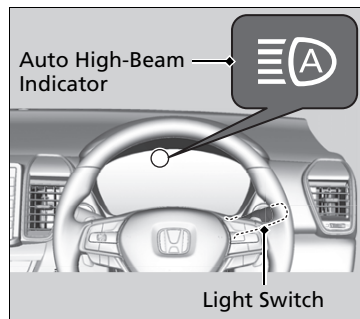
Auto High-Beam

The front wide view camera detects the light sources ahead of the vehicle such as the lights of a preceding or oncoming vehicle, or street lights. When you are driving at night, the system automatically switches the headlights between low beam and high beam depending on the situation.

■ How to Use the Auto High-Beam


■ Activating the system

When all of the following conditions have been met, the auto high-beam indicator comes on and automatically switches between the high beam and low beam, depending on the situation.



- The power mode is in ON.
- The light switch is in **AUTO**.
- The lever is in the low beam position.
- The headlights have been automatically activated.
- It is dark outside the vehicle.

If the auto high-beam indicator does not come on even when all the conditions have been met, carry out either of the procedures below and the indicator will come on.

- Pull the lever towards you and release it.
- Turn the light switch to  then turn the light switch to **AUTO**.

▶▶ Auto High-Beam

The auto high-beam system does not always operate in every situation. This system is just for assisting the driver. Always observe your surroundings and manually switch the headlights between high beam and low beam if necessary.

The range and the distance at which the camera can recognise light sources varies depending on conditions surrounding your vehicle.

Regarding the handling of the camera mounted to the inside of the windscreen, refer to the following.

▶▶ Front Wide View Camera P. 310

For the auto high-beam to work properly:

- Do not place an object that reflects light on the dashboard.
- Keep the windscreen around the camera clean.
When cleaning the windscreen, be careful not to apply windscreen cleanser to the camera lens.
- Do not attach an object, sticker, or film to the area around the camera.
- Do not touch the camera lens.

If the camera receives a strong impact, or repairing of the area near the camera is required, consult a dealer.

■ Automatic switching between high-beam and low-beam

When the auto-high beam indicator comes on, the headlights switch between high beam and low beam based on the following conditions.

High beam

All of the following conditions must be met before the high beams turn on.

- Your vehicle speed is 30 km/h or more.
- There are no preceding or oncoming vehicles with headlights or taillights turned on.
- There are few street lights on the road ahead.



Low beam

One of the following conditions must be met before the low beams turn on.

- Your vehicle speed is 24 km/h or less.
- There is a preceding or oncoming vehicle with headlights or taillights turned on.
- There are many street lights on the road ahead.

⌘ How to Use the Auto High-Beam

In the following cases, the auto high-beam system may not switch the headlights properly or the switching timing may be changed. If the automatic switching operation does not fit your driving habits, please switch the headlights manually.

- The brightness of the lights from a preceding or oncoming vehicle is intense or poor.
- Visibility is poor due to the weather (rain, snow, fog, windscreen frost, etc.).
- Surrounding light sources like street lights, electric billboards and traffic lights are illuminating the road ahead.
- The brightness level of the road ahead constantly changes.
- The road is bumpy or has many curves.
- A vehicle suddenly appears in front of you, or a vehicle in front of you is not in the preceding or oncoming direction.
- Your vehicle is tilted with a heavy load in the rear.
- A traffic sign, mirror, or other reflective object ahead is reflecting strong light towards the vehicle.
- The oncoming vehicle frequently disappears under roadside trees or behind median barriers.
- The preceding or oncoming vehicle is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter, or other small vehicle.

The auto high-beam system keeps the headlight low beam on when:


- Windscreen wipers are operating at a high speed.
- The camera has detected a dense fog.

■ Manual switching between high-beam and low-beam


If you want to manually switch the headlights between high beam and low beam, follow either of the procedures below. Note that when you do this, the auto high-beam indicator will turn off and the auto high-beam will be deactivated.

Using the lever:

Pull the lever towards you for flashing the high beams then release it or push the lever forward to the high beam position.

- To reactivate the auto high-beam, follow either of the procedures below and the auto high-beam indicator will come on.
- Pull the lever towards you and release it.
- Turn the light switch to  and then to **AUTO** when the lever is in the low beam position.

Using the light switch:

Turn the light switch to .

- To reactivate the auto high-beam, turn the light switch to **AUTO** when the lever is in the low beam position, and the auto high-beam indicator will come on.

» How to Use the Auto High-Beam

How to turn off the Auto High-Beam System

You can turn the auto high-beam system on and off.

► **Settings** P. 110, 133

Daytime Running Lights

The position/daytime running lights come on when the following conditions have been met:

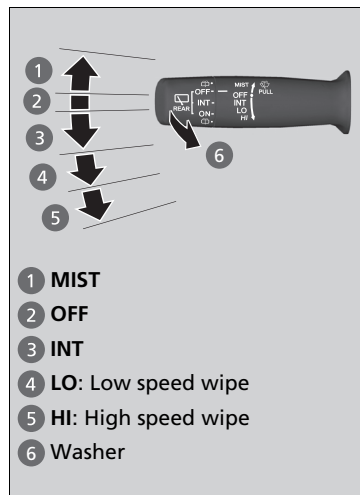
- The power mode is in ON.
- The headlight switch is in **AUTO**.

Setting the power mode to VEHICLE OFF will turn off the daytime running lights.

The daytime running lights are off once the headlight switch is turned on, or when the head light switch is in **AUTO** and it is getting darker outside.

Wipers and Washers

■ Windscreen Wipers/Washers



The windscreen wipers and washers can be used when the power mode is in ON.

■ MIST

The wipers run at high speed until you release the lever.

■ Wiper switch (OFF, INT, LO, HI)

Move the lever up or down to change the wiper settings.

■ Washer

Sprays while you pull the lever towards you. When you release the lever for more than one second, the spray stops, the wipers sweep two or three more times to clear the windscreen, and then stop.

►► Wipers and Washers

NOTICE

Do not use the wipers when the windscreen is dry. The windscreen will get scratched, or the rubber blades will get damaged.

NOTICE

Turn the washers off if no washer fluid comes out. The pump may get damaged.

The wiper motor may stop motor operation temporarily to prevent an overload. Wiper operation will return to normal within a few minutes.

NOTICE

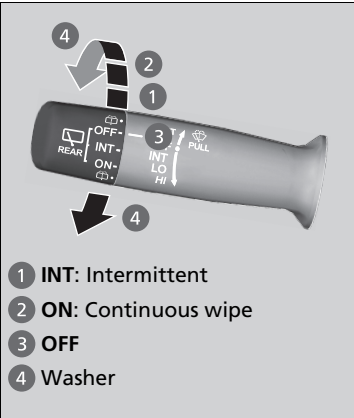
In cold weather, the blades may freeze to the windscreen.

Operating the wipers in this condition may damage the wipers. Use the demister to warm the windscreen, then turn the wipers on.

If the wipers stop operating due to an obstacle such as the buildup of snow, park the vehicle in a safe place.

Rotate the wiper switch to **OFF**, set the power mode to ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF, then remove the obstacle.

■ Rear Wiper/Washer



The rear wiper and washer can be used when the power mode is in ON.

■ Wiper switch (OFF, INT, ON)

Change the wiper switch setting according to the amount of rain.

■ Washer (🚿)

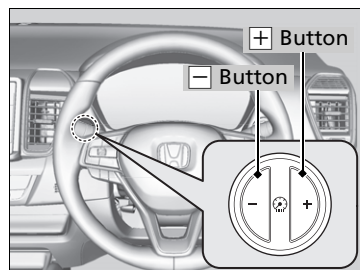
Sprays on the rear window while you rotate the switch to this position. Hold it to activate the rear wiper and to spray the washer. Once released, the washer spray will stop and the rear wiper will return to its selected switch setting after a few sweeps.

■ Operating in reverse

When you shift the transmission to **R** with the windscreen wipers activated, the rear wiper operates automatically as follows even if its switch is off.

Front Wiper Position	Rear Wiper Operation
INT (Intermittent)	Intermittent
LO (Low speed wipe) HI (High speed wipe)	Continuous

Brightness Control



When the power mode is in ON, you can use the **+** or **-** button to adjust instrument panel brightness.

Brighten: Press the **+** button.

Dim: Press the **-** button.

You will hear a beep when the brightness reaches minimum or maximum. Several seconds after adjusting the brightness, you will be returned to the previous screen.



■ Brightness level indicator

The brightness level is shown on the display while you are adjusting it.

▶▶ Brightness Control

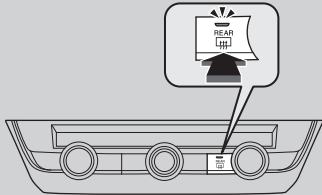
The brightness of the instrument panel will be reduced when the following conditions:

- The power mode is in ON.
- The light switch is in any position other than off and it is dark outside.

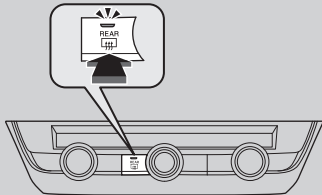
The brightness can be set differently for when the exterior lights are on, and when they are off.

Rear Demister Button

Right-hand drive type



Left-hand drive type



Press the rear demister button to demist the rear window when the power mode is in ON.

The rear demister automatically switches off after 10-30 minutes depending on the outside temperature.

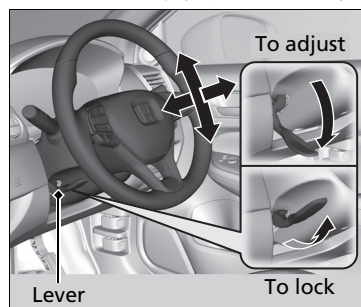
However, if the outside temperature is 0°C or below, it does not automatically switch off.

⌘ Rear Demister Button

This system consumes a lot of power, so turn it off when the window has been demisted. Also, do not use the system for a long time while the engine is idling. This may weaken the battery, making it difficult to start the engine.

Adjusting the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel height and distance from your body can be adjusted so that you can comfortably grip the steering wheel in an appropriate driving posture.



1. While the vehicle is stopped, push the steering wheel adjustment lever down.
 - The steering wheel adjustment lever is under the steering column.
2. Move the steering wheel up or down, and in or out.
 - Make sure you can see the instrument panel gauges and indicators.
3. Pull the steering wheel adjustment lever up to lock the steering wheel in position.
 - After adjusting the position, make sure you have securely locked the steering wheel in place by trying to move it up, down, in, and out.

► Adjusting the Steering Wheel

⚠ WARNING

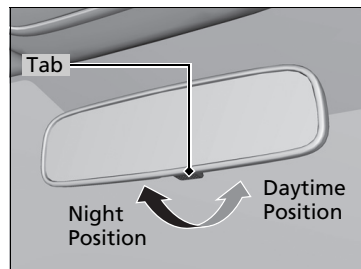
Adjusting the steering wheel position while driving may cause you to lose control of the vehicle and be seriously injured in a crash.

Adjust the steering wheel only when the vehicle is stopped.

Interior Rearview Mirror

Adjust the angle of the rearview mirror when you are sitting in the correct driving position.

Rearview Mirror with Day and Night Positions



Flip the tab to switch the position. The night position will help to reduce the glare from headlights behind you when driving after dark.

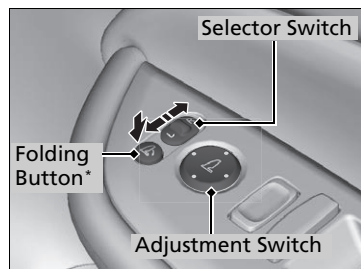
Mirrors

Keep the inside and outside mirrors clean and adjusted for best visibility.

Adjust the mirrors before you start driving.

➤ **Front Seats** P. 183

Power Door Mirrors



You can adjust the door mirrors when the power mode is in ON.

■ Mirror position adjustment

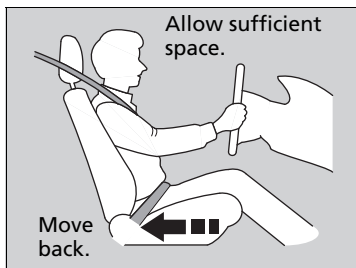
L/R selector switch: Select the left or right mirror. After adjusting the mirror, return the switch to the centre position.

Mirror position adjustment switch: Press the switch left, right, up, or down to move the mirror.

■ Folding door mirrors*

Press the folding button to fold in and out the door mirrors.

Front Seats



Adjust the driver's seat as far back as possible while allowing you to maintain full control of the vehicle. You should be able to sit upright, well back in the seat and be able to adequately press the pedals without leaning forward, and grip the steering wheel comfortably. The passenger's seat should be adjusted in a similar manner, so that it is as far back from the front airbag in the dashboard as possible.

Seats

Always make seat adjustments before driving.

Front Seats

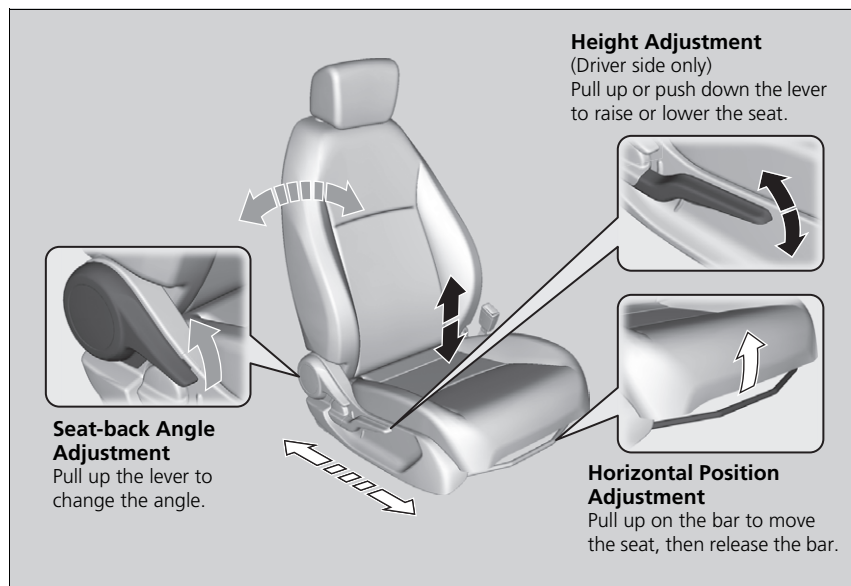
⚠ WARNING

Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious injury or death if the front airbags inflate.

Always sit as far back from the front airbags as possible while maintaining control of the vehicle.

In addition to the seat adjustment, you can adjust the steering wheel up and down, in and out. Allow at least 25 cm between the centre of the steering wheel and the chest.

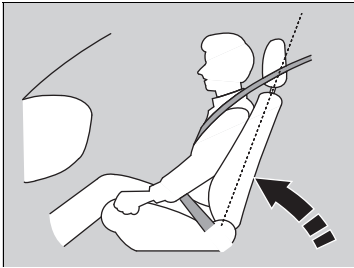
■ Adjusting the Seat Positions



► Adjusting the Seat Positions

Once a seat is adjusted correctly, rock it back and forth to make sure it is locked in position.

■ Adjusting the Seat-Backs



Adjust the driver's seat-back to a comfortable, upright position, leaving ample space between your chest and the airbag cover in the centre of the steering wheel.

The front seat passenger should also adjust their seat-back to a comfortable, upright position.

Reclining a seat-back so that the shoulder part of the belt no longer rests against the occupant's chest reduces the protective capability of the belt. It also increases the chance of sliding under the belt in a crash and being seriously injured. The farther a seat-back is reclined, the greater the risk of injury.

►► Adjusting the Seat-Backs

⚠ WARNING

Reclining the seat-back too far can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Adjust the seat-back to an upright position, and sit well back in the seat.

Do not put a cushion, or other object, between the seat-back and your back.

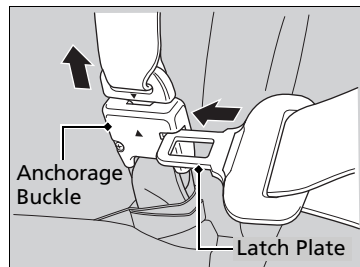
Doing so may interfere with proper seat belt or airbag operation.

If you cannot get far enough away from the steering wheel and still reach the controls, we recommend that you investigate whether some type of adaptive equipment may help.

Rear Seats

Folding Down the Rear Seats

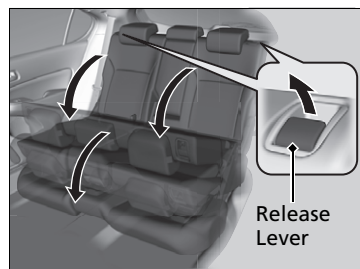
The rear seats can be folded down separately to allow for additional storage space.



■ To fold down the seat

1. Store the centre seat belt first. Insert the latch plate into the slot on the side of the anchorage buckle.
2. Retract the seat belt into the holder on the ceiling.
 - **Seat Belt with Detachable Anchorage**
P. 43
3. Lower the head restraint to its lowest position.
4. Pull the release lever and fold down the seat-back.

To return the seat to the original position, pull up the seat-back in the upright position.



Folding Down the Rear Seats

⚠ WARNING

Make sure the seat-backs are latched securely before driving.

Make sure all items in the luggage area or items extending to the rear seats are properly secured. Loose items can fly forward if you have to brake hard.

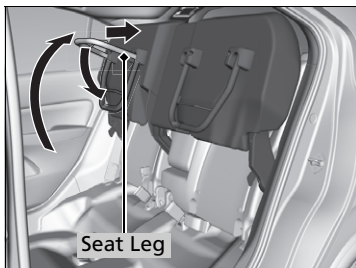
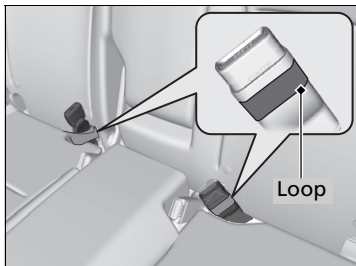
Remove any items from the rear seat cushion and floor before you fold down the rear seat.

To lock the seat-back upright, push it backwards until it locks.

Make sure the seat-back, head restraints and seat cushion are securely latched back into place before driving. Also, make sure all rear shoulder belts are positioned in front of the seat-back, and the centre shoulder belt is re-positioned in the holding slot.

The front seats must be far enough forward so they do not interfere with the rear seats as they fold down.

■ Folding the Rear Seat Up



Separately lift up the left and right halves of the rear seat cushions to make room for luggage area.

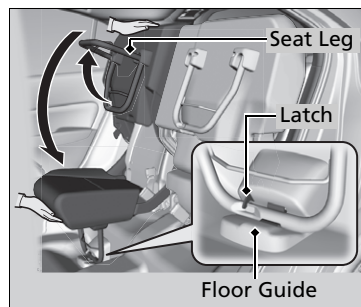
■ Lifting up the seat cushion

1. Lower the head restraint to its lowest position.
2. Make sure the seat belt buckles are in their loops on the seat.
3. Pull up the rear seat cushion.
4. Fold the seat leg.
5. Push the seat cushion firmly against the seat-back to lock it.

▣ Folding the Rear Seat Up

After you fold the seat up, or put it back in the original position, make sure the seat is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back.

Check if there are any items on the seat before you pull the seat cushion up. Check if there are any obstacles around the floor guide before you put the seat-back in the original position.



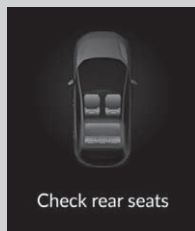
■ Putting the seat in the original position

1. Hold the seat cushion in place with one hand, then unlock it by pulling up the seat leg fully with your other hand.
 - Hold the seat cushion firmly, as it may abruptly fall when you unlock it.
2. Slowly lower the seat cushion, and set the seat leg in the floor guide until it latches in place.

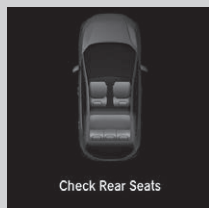
Rear Seat Reminder

This feature alerts you to the possible presence of passengers or items in the rear seats before you exit the vehicle. It activates when the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF if the rear doors were opened shortly before or after the power mode was set to ON.

Models with A-type meter



Models with B-type meter



A reminder appears on the driver information interface and an alert will sound when the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF.

⌘ Rear Seat Reminder

When the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF, the reminder comes on briefly, then the function is deactivated.

The reminder will not work if the power mode has not been set to ON within 10 minutes of operating the rear doors.

The system does not detect passengers in the rear seats. Instead, it can detect when a rear door is opened and closed, indicating that there may be something in the rear seats.

You can turn off the notification setting.

⌘ **Settings** P. 110, 133

Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and head restraints and put on their seat belts, it is very important that they continue to sit upright well back in their seats with their feet on the floor until the vehicle is safely parked and the engine is off.

Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury during a crash. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

In addition, an occupant who is out of position in the front seat can be seriously or fatally injured in a crash by striking interior parts of the vehicle or being struck by an inflating front airbag.

► Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

WARNING

Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Always sit upright, well back in the seat, with your feet on the floor.

Reclining the Front Seats

Reclining the seat-backs on the front seats until they are level with the rear seat cushions provides a large cushioned area that can (and should only) be used when the vehicle is safely parked.



1. Remove the front head restraints while pushing the release button.
► Store the head restraints in the luggage area.
2. Adjust the front seats forward as far as possible.
3. While pulling the seat-back angle adjustment lever, pivot the seat-back backward until it is level with the rear seat cushion.
4. Move the front seat backward until it touches the rear seat.
5. Unlatch the detachable anchorage from the anchorage buckle, and store the rear centre seat belt.

► **Seat Belt with Detachable Anchorage**
P. 43

To return the front seats and rear centre seat belt to their original positions, reverse this procedure.

When you return a seat-back to its upright position, hold the seat-back to keep it from going up too quickly.

► Reclining the Front Seats

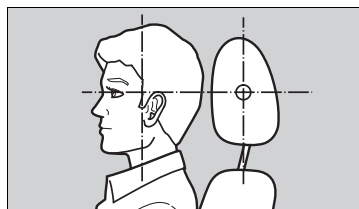
Both front seats must be returned to their normal upright position, and the head restraints reinstalled and properly adjusted before driving.

► **Removing and Reinstalling the Front and Rear Centre Head Restraints** P. 194

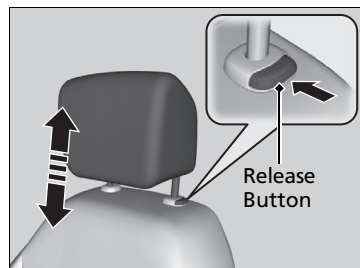
Head Restraints

Your vehicle is equipped with head restraints in all seating positions.

■ Adjusting the Front Head Restraint Positions



Position head in the centre of the head restraint.



Head restraints are most effective for protection against whiplash and other rear-impact crash injuries when the centre of the back of the occupant's head rests against the centre of the restraint. The tops of the occupant's ears should be level with the centre height of the restraint.

To raise the head restraint: Pull it upward.

To lower the head restraint: Push it down while pressing the release button.

► Adjusting the Front Head Restraint Positions

⚠ WARNING

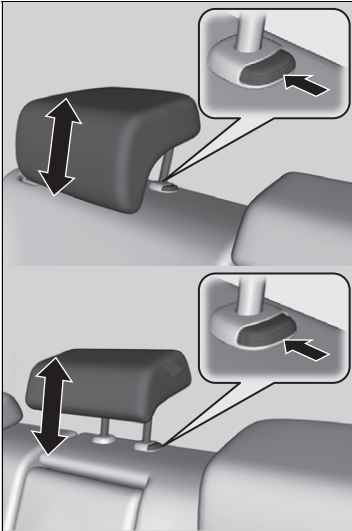
Improperly positioning head restraints reduces their effectiveness and increases the likelihood of serious injury in a crash.

Make sure head restraints are in place and positioned properly before driving.

In order for the head restraint system to work properly:

- Do not hang any items on the head restraints, or from the restraint legs.
- Do not place any objects between an occupant and the seat-back.
- Install each restraint in its proper location.

■ Changing the Rear Head Restraint Positions



A passenger sitting in the rear seat should adjust the height of their head restraint to an appropriate position before the vehicle begins moving.

To raise the head restraint:

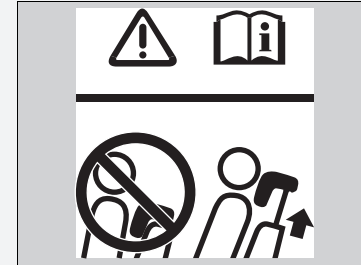
Pull it upward.

To lower the head restraint:

Push it down while pressing the release button.

▣ Changing the Rear Head Restraint Positions

When you use the head restraints in the rear seating positions, pull up the head restraints to its highest position. Do not use it in any lower position.



■ Removing and Reinstalling the Front and Rear Centre Head Restraints

Front and rear centre head restraints can be removed for cleaning or repair.

To remove the head restraint:

Pull the restraint up as far as it will go. Then, push the release button and pull the restraint up and out.

To reinstall the head restraint:

Insert the legs back in place, then adjust the head restraint to an appropriate height while pressing the release button. Pull up on the restraint to make sure it is locked in position.

►► Removing and Reinstalling the Front and Rear Centre Head Restraints

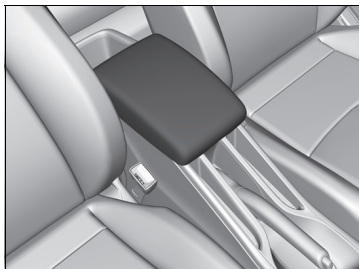
WARNING

Failure to reinstall or correctly reinstall, the head restraints can result in severe injury during a crash.

Always replace the head restraints before driving.

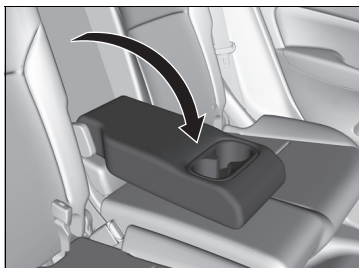
Armrest

■ Using the Front Seat Armrest



The console lid can be used as an armrest.

■ Using the Rear Seat Armrest*

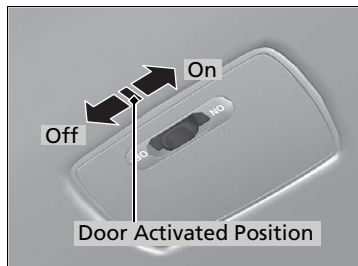


Pull down the armrest in the centre backrest.

* Not available on all models

Interior Lights

■ Interior Light Switches



■ ON

The interior light comes on regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

■ Door activated

The interior light comes on in the following situations:

- When any doors are opened.
- When the driver's door is unlocked.
- When the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF.

■ OFF

The interior light remains off regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

» Interior Light Switches

In the door activated position, the interior light fades out and turns off about 30 seconds after the doors are closed.

The light turns off after 30 seconds in the following situations:

- When you unlock the driver's door but do not open it.
- When you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF but do not open a door.

You can change the interior lights dimming time.

🔧 **Settings** P. 110, 133

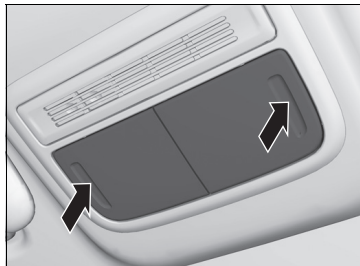
The interior light turns off immediately in the following situations:

- When you lock the driver's door.
- When you close the driver's door in ACCESSORY mode.
- When you set the power mode to ON.

If you leave any of the doors open in VEHICLE OFF mode, the interior light goes off after about 15 minutes.

To avoid draining the battery, do not leave the interior light on for an extended length of time when the engine is off.

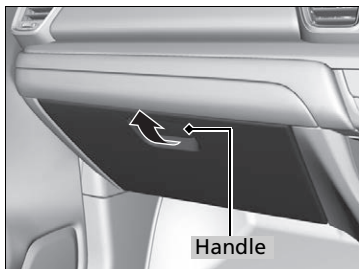
■ Map Light Switches



The map lights can be turned on and off by pressing the lenses.

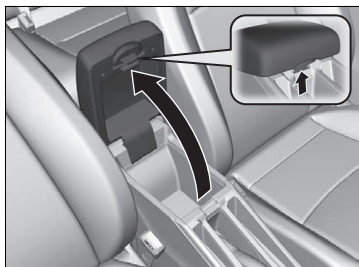
Storage Items

■ Glove Box



Pull the handle to open the glove box.

■ Console Compartment



Pull the handle to open the console compartment.

» Glove Box

⚠ WARNING

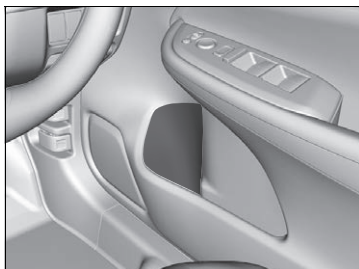
An open glove box can cause serious injury to your passenger in a crash, even if the passenger is wearing the seat belt.

Always keep the glove box closed while driving.

■ Beverage Holders



■ Front seat beverage holders



■ Front door side beverage holders

Located on both front door side pockets.

» Beverage Holders

NOTICE

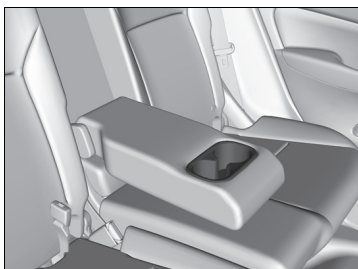
Spilled liquids can damage the upholstery, carpeting, and electrical components in the interior.

Be careful when you are using the beverage holders. Hot liquid can scald you.



■ **Rear door side beverage holders**

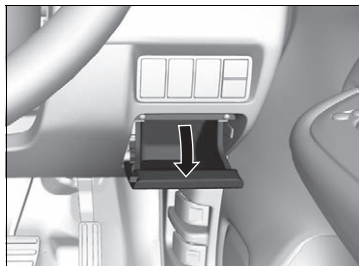
Located on both rear door side pockets.



■ **Rear seat beverage holders***

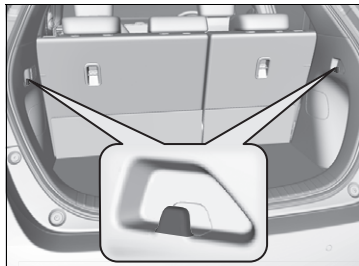
Fold the armrest down to use the rear seat beverage holders.

■ Driver's Side Pocket



Pull the lid to open the pocket.

■ Luggage Hooks



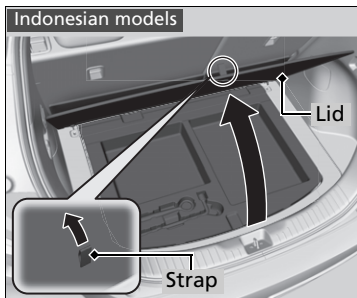
The luggage hooks in the luggage area can be used to hang a light items.

»» Luggage Hooks

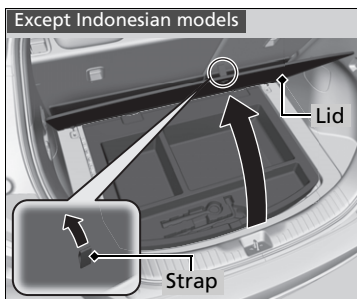
NOTICE

Do not hang a large object or an object that weighs more than 3 kg on the side luggage hooks. Hanging heavy or large objects may damage the hooks.

■ Luggage Floor Box



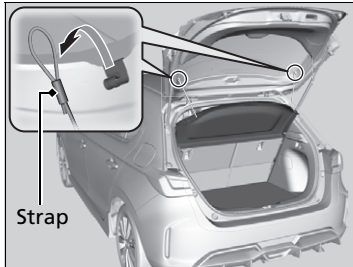
Pull the strap and open the lid.



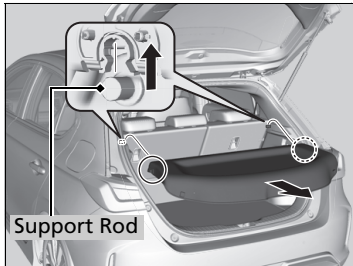
■ Luggage Area Cover*

The luggage area cover can be removed to give you more luggage room.

■ To remove the luggage area cover



1. Open the tailgate.
2. Remove the strap on each side of the tailgate.



3. Disengage the support rods, then remove the luggage area cover.

Reverse this procedure to install the luggage area cover.

After reinstalling the luggage area cover, make sure it is latched securely.

▣ Luggage Area Cover*

Do not place items on the luggage area cover, or stack objects higher than the top of the back seat. They could block your view and be thrown around the vehicle during a crush or sudden stop.

Do not apply excessive pressure to the cover, such as leaning on it to retrieve an item.

* Not available on all models

Other Interior Convenience Items

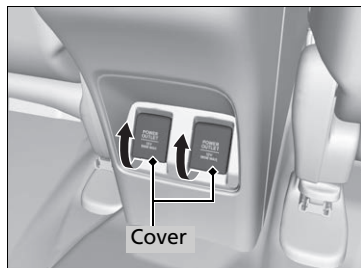
■ Accessory Power Sockets

The accessory power sockets can be used when the power mode is in ACCESSORY or ON.



■ Accessory power socket on the console panel

Open the cover to use it.



■ Accessory power sockets on the back of the console compartment*

Open the cover to use it.

►► Accessory Power Sockets

NOTICE

Do not insert an automotive type cigarette lighter element. This can overheat the accessory power socket.

The accessory power sockets are designed to supply power for 12-volt DC accessories that are rated 180 watts (15 amps) or less.

To prevent battery drain, only use the accessory power socket with the engine running.


Models with accessory power sockets on the back of the console compartment

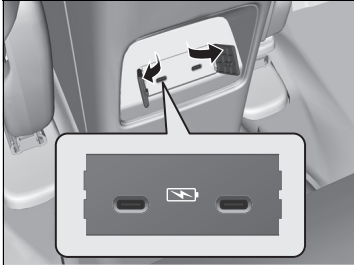
When these sockets are being used, the combined power rating of the accessories should not exceed 180 watts (15 amps).

All models

When the accessory power socket is not in use, close the cover to prevent any small foreign objects from getting into the accessory power socket.

■ USB Ports for Charging*

Install the USB connector to the USB port (3.0A) for charging the device.
The USB port with  symbol is for battery charge only.



▣ USB Ports for Charging*

- Do not leave the device to charge in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.
- We recommend using an extension cable with the USB port.
- Do not connect the device to charge using a hub.
- Do not use a device such as a card reader or hard disk drive, as the device or your files may be damaged.
- We recommend backing up your data before using the device in your vehicle.

The USB port can supply up to 3.0A of power. It does not output 3.0A unless the device requests.

For amperage details, read the operating manual of the device that needs to be charged.

Set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON first.

Under certain conditions, a device connected to the port may generate noise in the radio you are listening to.

If the USB charger becomes too hot, charging may be suspended.

* Not available on all models

Using Vents and A/C



Dashboard vents



Floor vents



Dashboard and floor vents



Floor and demister vents

Mode Control Dial

Change airflow.

Temperature Control Dial

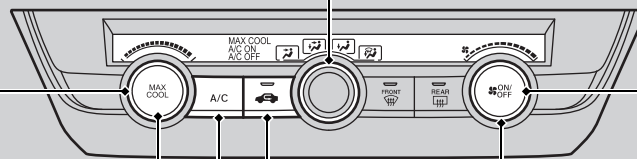
Adjusts the interior temperature.

MAX COOL Button

Press to cool down the interior rapidly.

A/C (Air Conditioning) Button

Press to cool the interior or dehumidify.



(ON/OFF) Button


Press to switch the system between on and off.

Fan Control Dial

Adjusts the fan speed.



(Recirculation) Button

Press the  button and switch the mode depending on environmental conditions.



Recirculation mode (indicator on):

Recirculates air from the vehicle's interior through the system.

Fresh air mode (indicator off):

Maintains outside ventilation. Keep the system in fresh air mode in normal situations.

■ Cooling

1. Adjust the fan speed using the fan control dial.
2. Select .
3. Adjust the temperature using the temperature control dial.
4. Press the **A/C** button (**A/C ON** is appeared).
5. Press the  button (the indicator off).

■ To rapidly cool down the interior

Press the **MAX COOL** button (**MAX COOL** is appeared).

►► Using Vents and A/C

Models with Auto Idle Stop

During idle-stops, air-conditioning is suspended, and only the blower remains active.

If you do not want air-conditioning suspended, press the Auto Idle Stop system OFF button to cancel idle-stop.

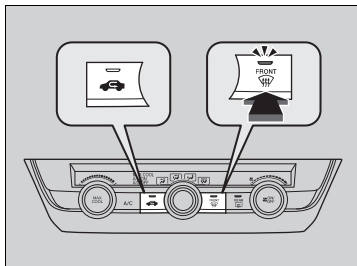
►► Cooling



While ECON mode is active, the system may have reduced cooling performance.


►► To rapidly cool down the interior

If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows.

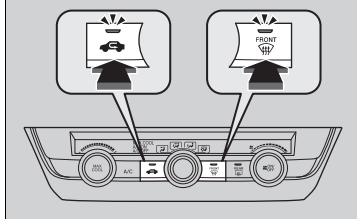
■ Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows



1. Set the fan to a high speed.
2. Press the  button.
3. Press the  button (indicator off).
4. Adjust the temperature until the airflow feels warm.

► If you want to rapidly defrost the window:
Set the fan to the maximum speed and higher temperature, then press the  button (indicator on).

■ To rapidly defrost the windows




►► Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows

For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.

Do not set the temperature near the lower limit. When cold air hits the windscreen, the outside of the windscreen may fog up.

Models with Auto Idle Stop

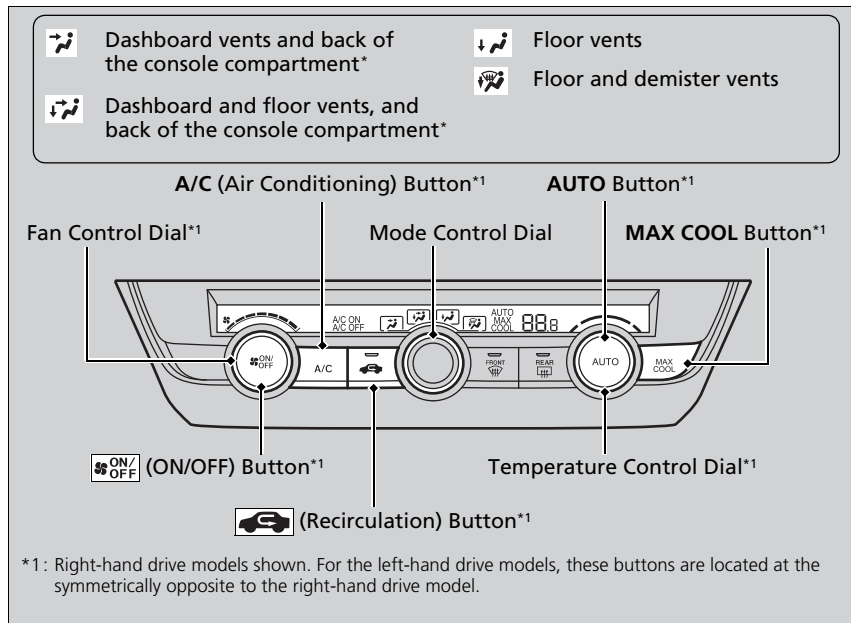
If you press the  button during Auto Idle Stop, the engine restarts automatically.

►► To rapidly defrost the windows

After defrosting the windows, switch over to fresh air mode. If you keep the system in recirculation mode, the windows may fog up from humidity. This impedes visibility.

Using Automatic Climate Control

The automatic climate control system maintains the interior temperature you select. The system also selects the proper mix of heated* or cooled air that raises* or lowers the interior temperature to your preference as quickly as possible.



Use the system when the engine is running.

1. Press the **AUTO** button.
2. Adjust the interior temperature using the temperature control dial.
3. Press the **(ON/OFF)** button to cancel.

* Not available on all models

Using Automatic Climate Control

If any buttons are pressed while using the climate control system in auto, the function of the button that was pressed will take priority.

The **AUTO** indicator will go off, but functions unrelated to the button that was pressed will be controlled automatically.

Continuously variable transmission models

While ECON mode is active, the climate control system may have reduced cooling performance.

If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows, press the **MAX COOL** button.

Models with Auto Idle Stop


During idle-stops, air-conditioning is suspended, and only the blower remains active.

If you do not want air-conditioning suspended, press the Auto Idle Stop system OFF button to cancel idle-stop.

When you set the temperature to the lower or upper* limit, **Lo** or **Hi*** is displayed.

Pressing the **(ON/OFF)** button switches the climate control system between on and off. When turned on, the system returns to your last selection.

■ Switching between the recirculation and fresh air modes

Press the  (Recirculation) button and switch the mode depending on environmental conditions.

Recirculation mode (indicator on): Recirculates air from the vehicle's interior through the system.

Fresh air mode (indicator off): Maintains outside ventilation. Keep the system in fresh air mode in normal situations.

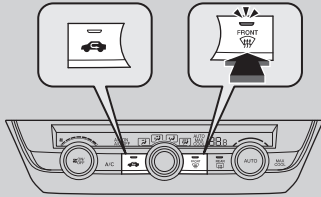
►► Using Automatic Climate Control

Left-hand drive type

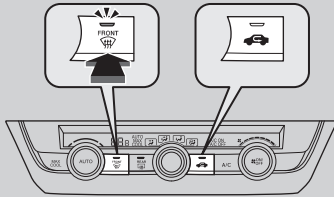
To prevent cold air from blowing in from outside, the fan may not start immediately when the **AUTO** button is pressed.


Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows


Right-hand drive type




Left-hand drive type




Press the  button to turn the air conditioning system on.

Press the  button (indicator off) to switch to the fresh air mode.

► If you want to rapidly defrost the window:

Press the  button (indicator on).


Press the  button again to turn it off and the system will return to the previous settings.

Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows

For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.

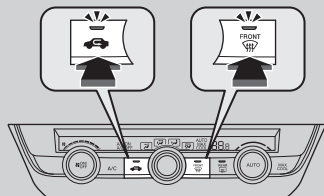
Do not set the temperature near the lower limit. When cold air hits the windscreen, the outside of the windscreen may fog up.

Models with Auto Idle Stop

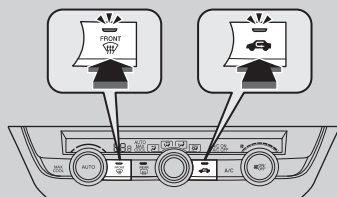
If you press the  button during Auto Idle Stop, the engine restarts automatically.

■ To rapidly defrost the windows

Right-hand drive type



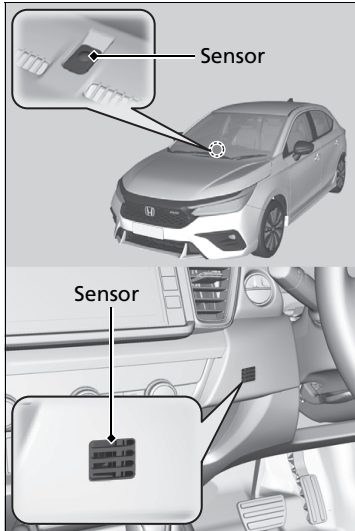
Left-hand drive type



►► To rapidly defrost the windows

After defrosting the windows, switch over to fresh air mode. If you keep the system in recirculation mode, the windows may fog up from humidity. This impedes visibility.

Automatic Climate Control Sensors



The automatic climate control system is equipped with sensors. Do not cover or spill any liquid on them.

Features

If this vehicle is equipped with an audio system, please refer to the audio system manual.
Consult a dealer for details.





Driving

This chapter discusses driving and refueling.

Before Driving

Driving Preparation	218
Load Limit	220

Towing a Trailer..... 221

When Driving

Starting the Engine	222
Precautions While Driving.....	229
Continuously Variable Transmission*	230

Continuously variable transmission models

Shifting	231
----------------	-----

Manual transmission models

Shifting	236
----------------	-----

Continuously variable transmission models

ECON Mode	239
Auto Idle Stop*	240
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System ..	246
Agile Handling Assist	248
Honda Sensing	249
Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)	252
Road Departure Mitigation System....	265
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC).....	273
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) ..	291
Lead Car Departure Notification System ..	304
Front Wide View Camera	310

Braking

Brake System	312
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)	314
Brake Assist System	315
Emergency Stop Signal	316

Parking Your Vehicle

When Stopped	317
Parking Sensor System*	319

Refueling

Fuel Information	323
How to Refuel	325

Fuel Economy and CO₂ Emissions..... 326

Turbo Engine Vehicle*..... 327

Driving Preparation

Check the following items before you start driving.

Exterior Checks

- Make sure there are no obstructions on the windows, door mirrors, exterior lights, or other parts of the vehicle.
 - ▶ Remove any frost, snow, or ice.
 - ▶ Remove any snow on the roof, as this can slip down and obstruct your field of vision while driving. If frozen solid, remove ice once it has softened.
 - ▶ When removing ice from around the wheels, be sure not to damage the wheel or wheel components.
 - Make sure the bonnet is securely closed.
 - ▶ If the bonnet opens while driving, your front view will be blocked.
 - Make sure the tyres are in good condition.
 - ▶ Check air pressures, and check for damage and excessive wear.
- 🔍 **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 377
- Make sure there are no people or objects behind or around the vehicle.
 - ▶ There are blind spots from the inside.

Exterior Checks

NOTICE

When doors are frozen shut, use warm water around the door edges to melt any ice. Do not try to force them open, as this can damage the rubber trim around the doors. When done, wipe dry to avoid further freezing.

Do not pour warm water into the key cylinder. You will be unable to insert the key if the water freezes in the hole.

Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite flammable materials left under the bonnet, causing a fire. If you've parked your vehicle for an extended period, inspect and remove any debris that may have collected, such as dried grass and leaves that have fallen or have been carried in for use as a nest by a small animal. Also, check under the bonnet for leftover flammable materials after you or someone else has performed maintenance on your vehicle.

Interior Checks

- Store or secure all items on board properly.
 - Carrying too much luggage, or improperly storing it, can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, stopping distance, and tyres, and make it unsafe.
 - 📖 **Load Limit** P. 220
- Do not pile items higher than the seat height.
 - They can block your view and may be thrown forward in the event of sudden braking.
- Do not place anything in the front seat footwells. Make sure to secure the floor mat.
 - An object or unsecured floor mat can interfere with your brake and accelerator pedal operation while driving.
- If you have any animals on board, do not let them move around in the vehicle.
 - They may interfere with driving and a crash could occur.
- Securely close all doors and the tailgate.
- Adjust your seating position properly.
 - Adjust the head restraint, too.
 - 📖 **Seats** P. 183
 - 📖 **Adjusting the Front Head Restraint Positions** P. 192
- Adjust the mirrors and steering wheel properly.
 - Adjust them while sitting in the proper driving position.
 - 📖 **Mirrors** P. 181
 - 📖 **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** P. 180

Interior Checks

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the luggage area, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

Models with headlight adjuster

You can adjust the low beam headlight angle by yourself.

📖 **Headlight Adjuster*** P. 171

* Not available on all models

- Be sure items placed on the floor behind the front seats cannot roll under the seats.
 - They can interfere with the driver's ability to operate the pedals, the operation of the seats.
- Everyone in the vehicle must fasten their seat belt.
 - 🔧 **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 41
- Make sure that the indicators in the instrument panel come on when you start the vehicle, and go off soon after.
 - Always have a dealer check the vehicle if a problem is indicated.
 - 🔧 **Indicators** P. 84

Load Limit

When you load luggage, the total weight of the vehicle, all passengers, and luggage must not exceed the maximum permissible weight.

🔧 **Specifications** P. 442

🔧 Load Limit

WARNING

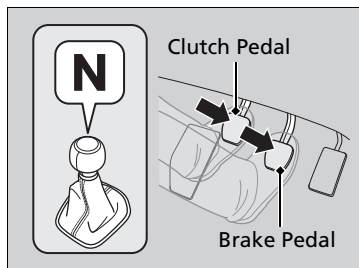
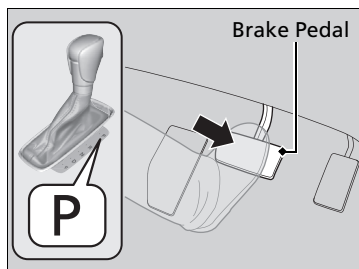
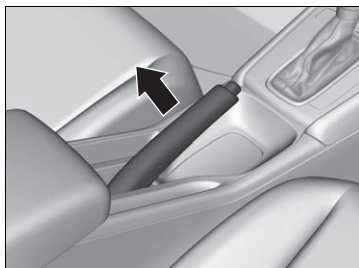
Overloading or improper loading can affect handling and stability and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

Follow all load limits and other loading guidelines in this manual.

Towing a Trailer

Your vehicle is not designed to tow a trailer. Attempting to do so can void your warranties.

Starting the Engine



1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.

Continuously variable transmission models

2. Check that the transmission is in **P**, then depress the brake pedal.
 - ▶ Although it is possible to start the vehicle in **N**, it is safer to start it in **P**.

Manual transmission models

2. Check that the shift lever is in **N**. Then, depress the brake pedal with your right foot, and the clutch pedal with your left foot.
 - ▶ The clutch pedal must be fully depressed to start the engine.

Starting the Engine

Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when starting the engine.

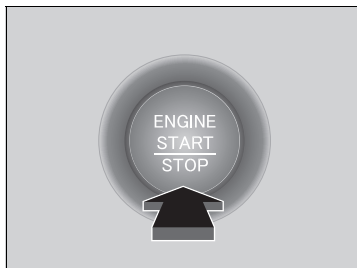
The engine is harder to start in cold weather and in thinner air found at altitudes above 2,400 metres.

When starting the engine in cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories such as the lights, cooling system*/climate control system*, and rear demister in order to reduce battery drain.

If the exhaust system sounds abnormal or you can smell exhaust gas inside the vehicle, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. There may be a problem with the engine or exhaust system.

Bring the keyless remote close to the **ENGINE START/STOP** button if the battery in the keyless remote is weak.

▶ **If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak** P. 410



All models

3. Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button without depressing the accelerator pedal.

▶▶ Starting the Engine

The engine may not start if the keyless remote is subjected to strong radio waves.

Do not hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button to start the engine.

If the engine does not start, wait at least 30 seconds before starting the engine again.

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft. If an improperly coded device is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled.

▶ **Immobilizer System** P. 159



■ Remote Engine Start*

You can remotely start the engine using the keyless remote.

■ To start the engine

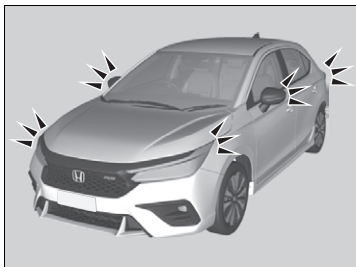
LED: Blinks when any button is pressed.



Press the  button, then press and hold the  button.

▶ Some exterior lights flash once.

If the engine starts successfully, some exterior lights flash six times.



▶▶ Remote Engine Start*

⚠ WARNING

Engine exhaust contains toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing carbon monoxide can kill you or cause unconsciousness.

Never use the remote engine starter when the vehicle is parked in a garage or other area with limited ventilation.

The remote engine start may violate local laws. Before using the remote engine start, check your local laws.

If there are buildings and obstacles between your vehicle and the keyless remote, the range will be reduced.



This distance may vary by external electrical interference.



If the engine does not start, exterior lights will not flash.

▶ Go within the range, and try again.


When started remotely, the engine automatically shuts off after 10 minutes of idling and/or the brake pedal and **ENGINE START/STOP** button have not been pressed simultaneously.

To extend the run time for another 10 minutes during the first run, press the  button, then press and hold the  button.

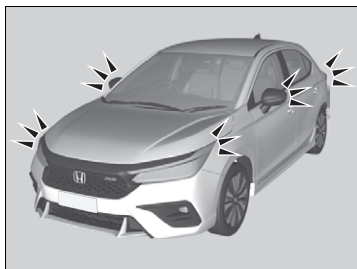
▶ Some exterior lights flash six times if a 10-minute extension request was transmitted successfully.


Remote Engine Start*

The engine may not start by the remote engine start if:

- You have disabled a remote engine start setting.
 **Settings** P. 110, 133
- The power mode is not in VEHICLE OFF.
- The transmission is in a position other than **P**.
- The bonnet is open, or any door or the tailgate is unlocked.
- You have already used the keyless remote twice to start the engine.
- Another registered keyless remote is in the vehicle.
- There is any antenna failure.
- The door is unlocked with the built-in key.
- The engine oil pressure is low.
- The engine coolant temperature is extremely high.
- The telematics unit malfunctions*.
- The security system alarm is not set.

■ To stop the engine



Press and hold the  button for one second.

If the engine stops successfully, the exterior lights flash once.

When the keyless remote is out of the keyless access system range, the exterior lights will not flash. The engine will not stop.

▶ Go within the range, and try again.

▶▶ Remote Engine Start *

The engine may stop while it is running if:

- You do not start the vehicle within 10 minutes of starting the engine with the keyless remote.
- The engine is stopped by using the keyless remote.
- The security system alarm is not set.
- The door is unlocked with the built-in key.
- The bonnet is open, or any door, or the tailgate is unlocked.
- You press the shift lever release button.
- The engine coolant temperature is extremely high.
- The battery is low.
- The engine oil pressure is low.
- The malfunction indicator lamp comes on if there is a problem with the emissions control systems.

While the engine is running, the vehicle will automatically precondition inside the vehicle.

When it is warm outside:

- The cooling system*/climate control system* is activated in recirculation mode.

When it is cold outside:

- The demister is activated at a moderately warm temperature.
- The rear demister is activated.

Starting to Drive

Continuously variable transmission models

When the engine was started using the keyless remote*

1. Depress and hold the brake pedal, then press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

When the engine was started in any case

2. Keeping your right foot on the brake pedal, release the parking brake. Check that the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) has gone off.

➤ **Parking Brake** P. 312

3. Put the shift lever in **[D]**. Select **[R]** when reversing.

4. Gradually release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal to pull away.

Hill Start Assist System

Hill start assist keeps the brake engaged briefly to help to prevent the vehicle from rolling on inclines as you move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator.

Manual transmission models

Depress the clutch pedal, and shift to one of the forward gears when facing uphill, or **[R]** when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

Continuously variable transmission models

Put the transmission into **[D]** or **[S]** when facing uphill, or **[R]** when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

Starting to Drive

When the engine was started using the keyless remote*

The engine stops when the transmission is taken out of **[P]** before the **ENGINE START/STOP** button is pressed. Follow step 1 when starting to drive.

Hill Start Assist System

Hill start assist may not prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill on a very steep or slippery slope, and will not operate on small inclines.

Hill start assist will operate even when VSA is switched off.

Hill start assist is not a replacement for the parking brake.

■ Stopping the Engine

You can turn the engine off when the vehicle is completely stopped.

Continuously variable transmission models

1. Put the transmission into **P**.
2. Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

Manual transmission models

- If the shift lever is in **N**, press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.
- If the shift lever is in any gear other than **N**, depress the clutch pedal, then press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

Precautions While Driving

■ In a Fog

Visibility becomes low when it is foggy. When you drive, turn on the low beam headlights even during the daytime. Slow down, using the road line in the centre, guard rails, and the taillights of the vehicle ahead of you as your driving guide.

■ In a Strong Wind

If a strong side wind drifts your vehicle while driving, hold the steering wheel tight. Slowly decelerate your vehicle and keep your vehicle in the middle of the road. Be careful with wind gusts especially when your vehicle is exiting a tunnel, driving on a bridge or river bank, and driving through an open area like a quarry, and when a large lorry is passing by.

■ In Rain

The road is slippery when raining. Avoid hard braking, rapid acceleration, and abrupt steering and be more cautious when driving. It is likely to experience hydroplaning phenomenon if you are driving on a rutted road with puddles. Do not drive in deep water and on flooded roads. This can damage the engine or driveline, or cause electrical component failure.

» Precautions While Driving

CAUTION: Do not drive on the road where water is deep. Driving through deep water will cause damage to the engine and electrical equipment and the vehicle will break down.

Continuously variable transmission models

NOTICE

Do not operate the shift lever while pressing the accelerator pedal. You could damage the transmission.

NOTICE

If you repeatedly turn the steering wheel at an extremely low speed, or hold the steering wheel in the full left or right position for a while, the electric power steering (EPS) system heats up. The system goes into a protective mode and limits its performance. The steering wheel becomes harder and harder to operate. Once the system cools down, the EPS system is restored. Repeated operation under these conditions can eventually damage the system.

If the power mode is set to ACCESSORY while driving, the engine will shut down and all steering and brake power assist functions will stop, making it difficult to control the vehicle.

Do not select **N** while driving as you will lose engine braking (and acceleration) performance.

■ Other Precautions

If there is a strong impact with something under the vehicle, stop in a safe location. Check the underside of the vehicle for damage or any fluid leaks.

Continuously Variable Transmission *

■ Creeping

When the engine runs at higher idle speeds, the creeping force increases. Keep the brake pedal firmly depressed when stopped.

■ Kickdown

Quickly depressing the accelerator pedal while driving uphill may cause the transmission to drop to a lower ratio, unexpectedly increasing vehicle speed. Depress the accelerator pedal carefully, especially on slippery roads and curves.

⌘ Precautions While Driving

During the first 1,000 km of operation, avoid sudden acceleration or full throttle operation so as not to damage the engine or powertrain.

Avoid hard braking for the first 300 km after purchasing your new vehicle or replacing the brake pads or rotors to allow for proper break-in.

⌘ In Rain

Be careful when hydroplaning phenomenon occurs. When you drive on a road covered with water at excessive speed, a layer of water builds between the tyres and the road surface. If this occurs, the vehicle cannot respond to control inputs such as steering, and braking.

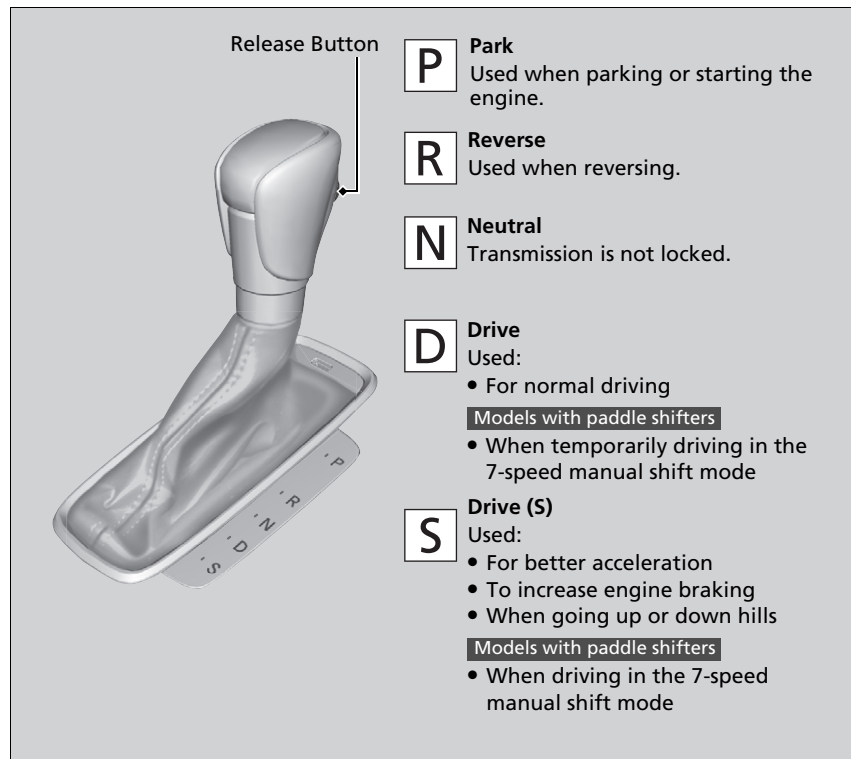
Slowly decelerate when you shift down. If the road is slippery, sudden engine braking can cause the tyres to skid.

Continuously variable transmission models

Shifting

Change the shift position in accordance with your driving needs.

■ Shift lever positions



► Shift lever positions

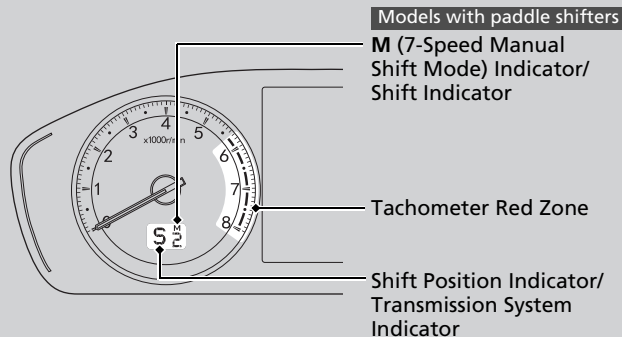
You cannot change the power mode from ON to VEHICLE OFF unless the shift lever is in **P**.

The vehicle may move very slightly even in **N** while the engine is cold.

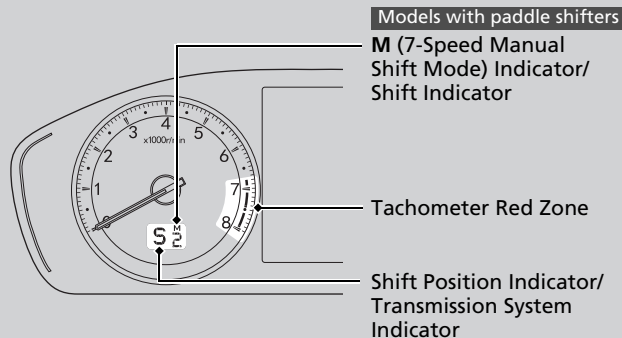
Depress the brake pedal firmly and, when necessary, apply the parking brake.

■ Shift Lever Operation

Thai models with A-type meter



Except Thai models with A-type meter



►► Shift Lever Operation

NOTICE

When you change the shift lever from **D** to **R** and vice versa, come to a complete stop and keep the brake pedal depressed. Operating the shift lever before the vehicle has come to a complete standstill can damage the transmission.

Use the shift position indicator to check the lever position before pulling away.

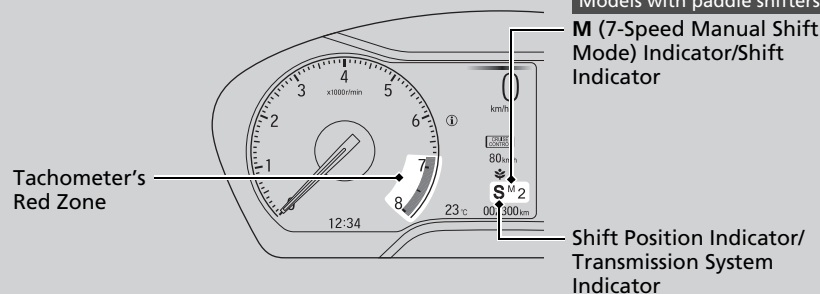
If the transmission system indicator blinks when driving, in any shift position, there is a problem with the transmission. Avoid sudden acceleration and have the transmission checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

The fuel supply may be cut off if you drive at engine speeds in or over the tachometer red zone (engine speed limit). If this happens, you may experience a slight jolt.

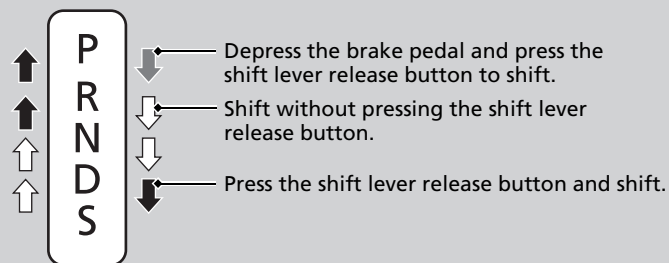
It may not be possible to operate the shift lever if the brake pedal is applied while the shift lever release button is held down. Depress the brake pedal first.

When shifting positions in extremely low temperatures (-30°C), there may be a short delay before the shift position is displayed. Always confirm you are in the correct shift position before driving.

Models with B-type meter



All models



Models with paddle shifters

■ 7-Speed Manual Shift Mode

Use the paddle shifters to change between 1st and 7th speeds without releasing your hands from the steering wheel. The transmission switches to the 7-speed manual shift mode when you pull a paddle shifter while driving. This mode is useful when engine braking is needed.

■ When the shift lever is in **[D]**:

The shift mode goes into the 7-speed manual shift mode temporarily, and the number is displayed in the shift indicator.

The 7-speed manual shift mode is cancelled automatically if you drive at constant speed or accelerate, and the number in the shift indicator goes off.

You can cancel this mode by pulling the **[+]** paddle shifter for a few seconds.

The 7-speed manual shift mode is especially useful when reducing the vehicle speed temporarily before making a turn.

■ When the shift lever is in **[S]**:

The shift mode goes into the 7-speed manual shift mode. The **M** indicator and the speed number are displayed in the shift indicator. As the vehicle speed slows down, the transmission automatically shifts down accordingly. When the vehicle comes to a stop, it automatically shifts down into 1st.

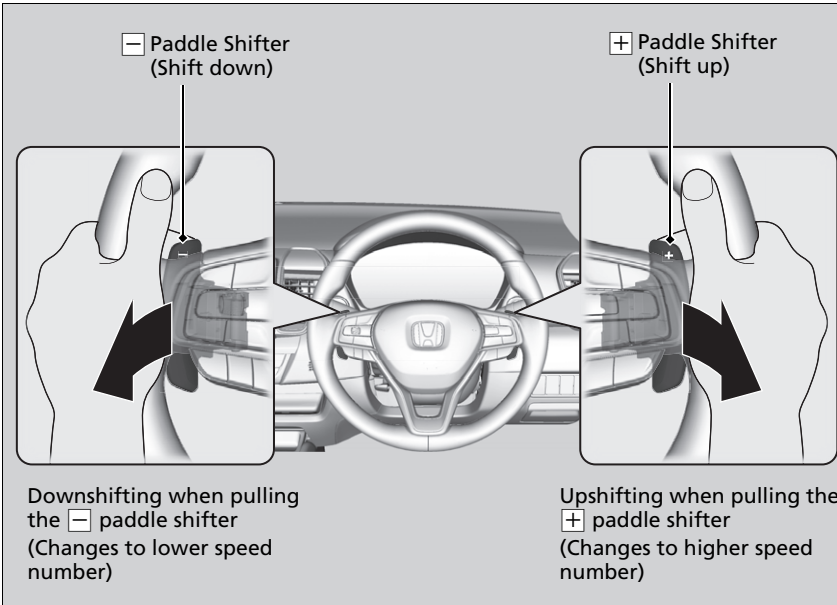
If the vehicle speed increases and the engine speed reaches near the tachometer's red zone, the transmission automatically shifts up.

When cancelling the 7-speed manual shift mode, move the shift lever from **[S]** to **[D]**. When the 7-speed manual shift mode is cancelled, the **M** indicator and shift indicator will turn off.

You can only pull away in 1st speed.

Models with paddle shifters

7-Speed Manual Shift Mode Operation



7-Speed Manual Shift Mode Operation

In the 7-speed manual shift mode, the transmission shifts up or down by operating either paddle shifter under the following conditions:

Shift Up: The engine speed reaches the lowest threshold of the higher speed position.

Shift Down: The engine speed reaches the highest threshold of the lower speed position.

When the engine speed reaches near the tachometer's red zone, the transmission shifts up automatically.

When the engine speed reaches the lowest threshold of the selected speed position, the transmission shifts down automatically.

Operating the paddle shifters on slippery surfaces may cause the tyres to lock up. In this case, the 7-speed manual shift mode is cancelled and goes back to the normal **D** driving mode.

Each paddle shift operation makes a single speed change.

To change continuously, release the paddle shifter before pulling it again for the next speed.

The shift indicator blinks when you cannot shift up or down. It indicates that your vehicle speed is not in its allowable shifting range.

Slightly accelerate to shift up and decelerate to shift down while the indicator is blinking.

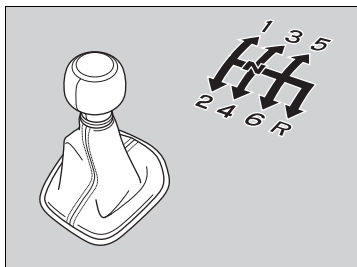
Manual transmission models

Shifting

■ Shift Lever Operation

Fully depress the clutch pedal to operate the shift lever and change gears, then slowly release the pedal.

Depress the clutch pedal, and pause for a few seconds before shifting into **[R]**, or shift into one of the forward gears for a moment. This stops the gears so they do not “grind.”



When you are not shifting, do not rest your foot on the clutch pedal. This can cause your clutch to wear out faster.

» Shifting

NOTICE

Do not shift to **[R]** before the vehicle comes to a complete stop.

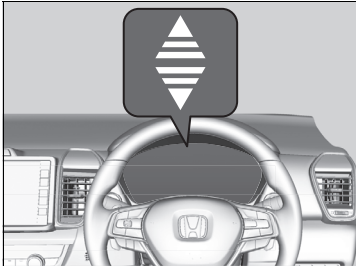
Shifting to **[R]** before stopping can damage the transmission.

NOTICE

Before downshifting, make sure the engine will not go into the tachometer's red zone. Should this occur, it can severely damage your engine.

If you exceed the maximum speed for the gear you are in, the engine speed will enter into the tachometer's red zone. When this happens, you may experience a slight jolt.

■ Shift Up/Down Indicator



Come on to inform you that upshifting or downshifting is necessary to prevent the engine from over revving or stalling.

The shift up indicator: Comes on when upshifting is recommended.

The shift down indicator: Comes on when downshifting is recommended.

▣ Shift Up/Down Indicator

This indicator will not prompt you to downshift to increase engine braking. It is up to you to downshift to increase engine braking when driving downhill.

Always shift down at the appropriate vehicle speed.

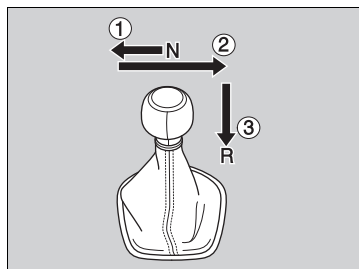
The shift down indicator does not come on when downshifting from **2** to **1**.

Road and traffic conditions may require you to shift at times other than those indicated.

■ Reverse Lockout

The manual transmission has a lockout mechanism that stops you from accidentally shifting into **R** from a forward gear while the vehicle is moving above a certain speed.

If you cannot shift to **R** when the vehicle is stopped, do the following:



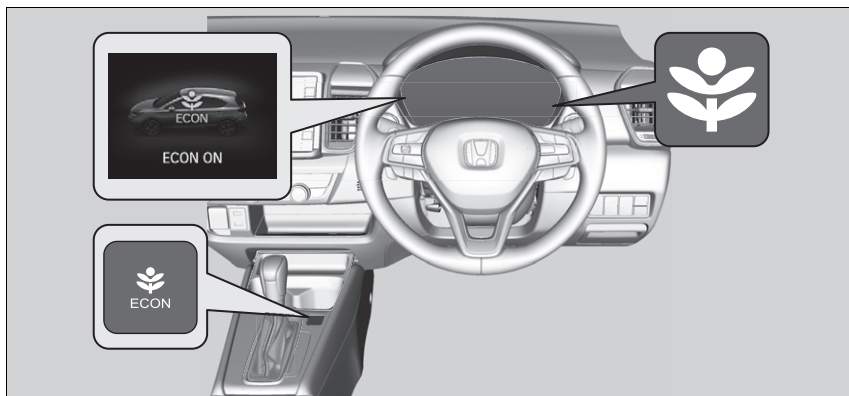
1. Depress the clutch pedal, move the shift lever all the way to the left, and shift to **R**.
2. If you still cannot shift into **R**, apply the parking brake, and set the power mode to ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF.
3. Depress the clutch pedal and shift into **R**.
4. Keep depressing the clutch pedal and start the engine.

►► Reverse Lockout

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if you have to go through this procedure repeatedly.

Continuously variable transmission models

ECON Mode



The **ECON** button turns the **ECON** mode on and off.
The **ECON** mode helps you to improve your fuel economy by adjusting the performance of the engine and cooling system*/climate control system*.

▶▶ ECON Mode

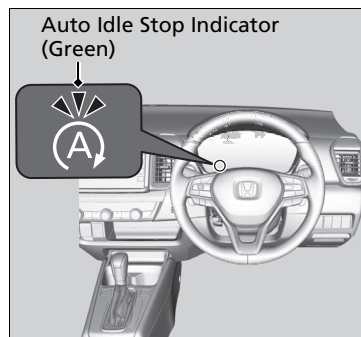
While in ECON mode, the cooling system*/climate control system* has greater temperature fluctuation.

The mode may not be able to be changed under some driving conditions.

* Not available on all models

Auto Idle Stop*

To help to maximise fuel economy, the engine automatically stops when the vehicle comes to a stop, depending on environmental and vehicle operating conditions. The indicator (green) comes on at this time.



The environmental and vehicle conditions that impact Auto Idle Stop system operation are varied.

▶ Auto Idle Stop Activates When:

P. 242, 243

The engine then restarts once the vehicle is about to move again, and the indicator (green) goes off.

▶ The Engine Automatically Restarts When:

P. 244

If the driver's door is opened while the indicator (green) comes on, a buzzer sounds to notify you that the Auto Idle Stop function is in operation.

A message associated with Auto Idle Stop appears on the driver information interface.

▶▶ Auto Idle Stop*

The 12-volt battery installed in this vehicle is specifically designed for a model with Auto Idle Stop. Using a 12-volt battery other than this specified type may shorten the 12-volt battery life, and prevent Auto Idle Stop from activating. If you need to replace the 12-volt battery, make sure to select the specified type. Ask a dealer for more details.

▶ Specifications P. 442

The duration of the Auto Idle Stop operation:

- Increase in the ECON mode, compared to when the ECON mode is off, with cooling system*/climate control system* in use.

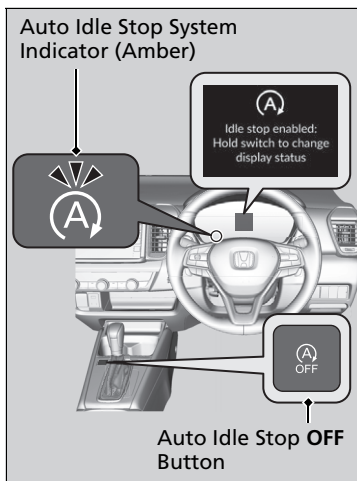
▶ ECON Mode P. 239



A message appears on the driver information interface when the Auto Idle Stop system cannot be activated.

❏ **Auto Idle Stop System ON/OFF** P. 241

■ Auto Idle Stop System ON/OFF



To turn the Auto Idle Stop system off, press this button. The Auto Idle Stop system stops.

▶ Auto Idle Stop system will stop, the indicator will come on and a message appears on the driver information interface.

The Auto Idle Stop system is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

❏ Auto Idle Stop System ON/OFF

If you turn off the Auto Idle Stop system while it is activated, the engine will restart.

❏ **Auto Idle Stop Activates When:** P. 242

If you press and hold the Auto Idle Stop **OFF** button, you can select whether to display the status messages or not.

■ Auto Idle Stop Activates When:


The vehicle stops with the shift lever in **[D]** and the brake pedal depressed. When you shift into **[P]** quickly with depressing the brake pedal, the Auto Idle Stop continues to operate, even if the brake pedal is released.

► If you depress the brake pedal, the engine may automatically restarts.


■ Auto Idle Stop does not activate when:

- The Auto Idle Stop **OFF** button is pressed.
- The driver's seat belt is not fastened.
- The engine is not adequately warmed up or coolant temperature is high.
- The transmission fluid temperature is low or high.
- The vehicle comes to a stop again before the vehicle speed reaches 5 km/h after the engine starts.
- The vehicle is stopped on a steep incline.
- The transmission is in a position other than **[D]**.
- The engine is started with the bonnet open.
 - Turn off the engine. Close the bonnet before you restart the engine to activate Auto Idle Stop.
- The battery charge is low.
- The internal temperature of the battery is 5°C or less.

Models with climate control system

- The climate control system is in use, and the outside temperature is below -20°C or over 40°C.
- The climate control system is in use, and the temperature is set to **Lo**.
-  is ON (indicator on).
- The **MAX COOL** button is ON.

Models with cooling system

-  is on with the fan operating.

► Auto Idle Stop Activates When:

Do not open the bonnet while the Auto Idle Stop function is activated. If the bonnet is opened, the engine will not restart automatically. In this case, restart the engine with the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

► **Starting the Engine** P. 222

Pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button causes the engine to no longer restart automatically. Follow the standard procedure to start the engine.

► **Starting the Engine** P. 222

■ Auto Idle Stop may not activate when:

- The vehicle is stopped by braking suddenly.
- The steering wheel is operated.
- Altitude is high.
- The vehicle is repeatedly accelerated and decelerated at a low speed.

Models with climate control system

- The fan speed is high.
- The climate control system is in use, and there is a significant difference between the set temperature and the actual interior temperature.


■ The Engine Automatically Restarts When:

- The brake pedal is released.
- When the transmission is put into **P** from **D** or **N** on a slope.


■ The engine restarts even if the brake pedal is depressed when:

- The Auto Idle Stop **OFF** button is pressed.
- The steering wheel is operated.
- The transmission is put into **R** or **S**, or when it is set from **N** to **D**.
 - If you put the transmission into **P** after the Auto Idle Stop activates, the Auto Idle Stop continues to operate. In this case, the engine restarts when you depress the brake pedal.
- The pressure on the brake pedal is reduced and the vehicle starts moving while stopped on an incline.
- The brake pedal is released slightly during a stop.
- The battery charge becomes low.
- The accelerator pedal is depressed.
- The driver's seat belt is unlatched.

Models with climate control system

-  is ON (indicator on).
- The climate control system is in use, and the difference between the set temperature and actual interior temperature becomes significant.
- The **MAX COOL** button is ON.

Models with cooling system

-  is on with the fan operating.

►► The Engine Automatically Restarts When:

If you are using an electronic device during Auto Idle Stop, the device may temporarily be turned off when the engine restarts.

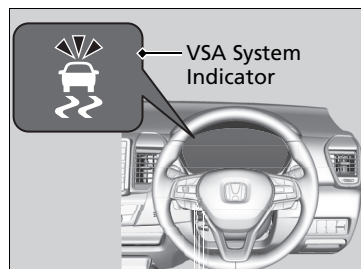
■ Starting Assist Brake Function

Briefly keeps the brake applied after releasing the brake pedal to restart the engine.
This can keep your vehicle from unexpectedly moving while on an incline.

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

VSA helps to stabilise the vehicle during cornering if the vehicle turns more or less than what was intended. It also assists in maintaining traction on slippery surfaces. It does so by regulating engine output and selectively applying the brakes.

■ VSA Operation



When VSA activates, you may notice that the engine does not respond to the accelerator. You may also notice some noise from the hydraulic brake system. You will also see the indicator blink.

▣ Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

The VSA may not function properly if tyre type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre, and the air pressures as specified.

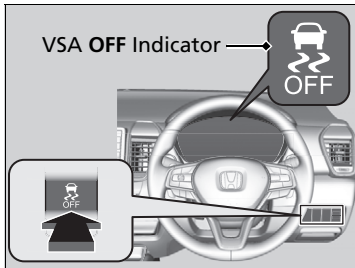
When the VSA system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While this may not interfere with normal driving, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

VSA cannot enhance stability in all driving situations and does not control the entire braking system. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

The main function of the VSA system is generally known as Electronic Stability Control (ESC). The system also includes a traction control function.


The Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, vehicle stability assist (VSA) **OFF**, Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS), Road Departure Mitigation, and safety support indicator may come on in amber along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

■ VSA On and Off



This button is on the driver side control panel. To partially disable VSA functionality/features, press and hold it until you hear a beep.


Your vehicle will have normal braking and cornering ability, but traction control function will be less effective.

To restore VSA functionality/features, press the  (VSA **OFF**) button until you hear a beep.

VSA is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

▣ Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

In certain unusual conditions when your vehicle gets stuck in shallow mud or fresh snow, it may be easier to free it with the VSA temporarily switched off.

When the  (VSA **OFF**) button is pressed, the traction control function becomes less effective. This allows for the wheels to spin more freely at low speed. You should only attempt to free your vehicle with the VSA off if you are not able to free it when the VSA is on.

Immediately after freeing your vehicle, be sure to switch VSA on again. We do not recommend driving your vehicle with the VSA system switched off.

You may hear a motor sound coming from the engine compartment while system checks are being performed immediately after starting the engine or while driving. This is normal.

Agile Handling Assist

Lightly brakes the front wheels, as needed, when you turn the steering wheel, and helps support the vehicle's stability and performance during cornering.

⚡ Agile Handling Assist

The agile handling assist cannot enhance stability in all driving situations. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

When the VSA system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, the agile handling assist does not activate.

You may hear a sound coming from the engine compartment while the agile handling assist is activated. This is normal.

Assists with functions such as acceleration, braking, and steering in order to reduce the burden on the driver, as well as help avoid or reduce the severity of collisions.

Honda Sensing has the following functions:

■ The functions which do not require switch operations to activate

- Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) 🚗 P. 252
- Road Departure Mitigation System 🚗 P. 265
- Lead Car Departure Notification System 🚗 P. 304
- Auto High-Beam 🚗 P. 172
- Parking Sensor System * 🚗 P. 319

■ The functions which require switch operations to activate

- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) 🚗 P. 273
- Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) 🚗 P. 291

» Honda Sensing

Thai models

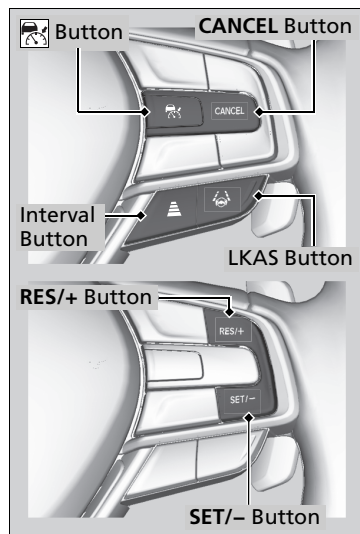
CAUTION: This equipment should be operated keeping the radiator at least 20 cm or more away from person's body (excluding extremities: hands, wrists, feet and ankles).

This telecommunication equipment conforms to NTC technical requirement.

This telecommunication equipment has EMF radiation conforms to NTC EMF exposure standard.

* Not available on all models

■ Operation Switches for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)/ Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)



■ Button

Press to activate standby mode for ACC.
Or press to cancel the system.

■ LKAS Button

Press to activate standby mode for LKAS.
Or press to cancel the system.

■ RES/+ and SET/- Buttons

Press **RES/+** button to set or resume the ACC
or increase the vehicle speed.
Press **SET/-** button to set the ACC or decrease
the vehicle speed.

■ Interval Button

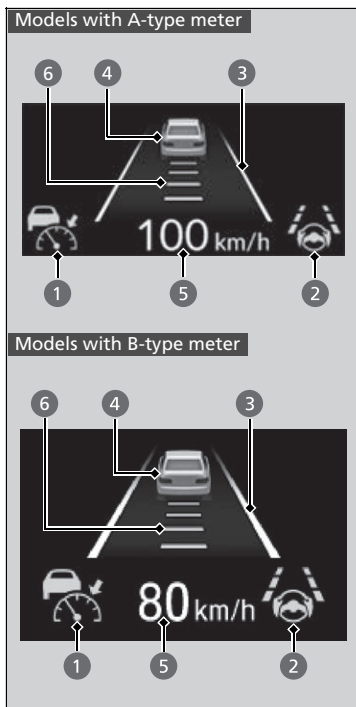
Press to change the ACC following-interval.

■ CANCEL Button

Press to cancel ACC.

Gauge Content

You can see the current state of Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) and Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS).



- ① Indicates that ACC is ready to be activated.
 - Green: The system is on.
 - White: The system is standby.
 - Amber: There is a problem with the system.
- ② Indicates that LKAS is ready to be activated.
 - Green: The system is on.
 - White: The system is standby.
 - Amber: There is a problem with the system.
- ③ Indicates that LKAS is activated and whether or not traffic lane lines are detected.
 - Green lines: The system is on.
 - White lines: Traffic lane lines are detected.
 - Amber line: Lane departure is detected.
- ④ Indicates whether or not ACC detected the vehicle ahead.
- ⑤ Indicates that ACC shows the set vehicle speed.
 - White: Set Vehicle Speed
 - Grey: Prior Set Speed
- ⑥ Indicates that ACC shows the set vehicle interval.

Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

The system can assist you when it determines there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead from behind, an oncoming vehicle in front, a vehicle approaching from the side, a pedestrian, or someone riding a bicycle (moving bicycle). The CMBS is designed to alert you when the potential for a collision is determined, as well as assist in reducing speed, avoiding collisions, and reducing collision severity.

Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

Important Safety Reminder

The CMBS is designed to reduce the severity of an unavoidable collision. It does not prevent collisions nor stop the vehicle automatically. It is still your responsibility to operate the brake pedal and steering wheel appropriately according to the driving conditions.

The CMBS may not activate or may not detect a vehicle in front of your vehicle under certain conditions:

📖 **CMBS Conditions and Limitations** P. 257

You can read about handling information for the front wide view camera equipped with this system.

📖 **Front Wide View Camera** P. 310

When the CMBS is activated, it will continue to operate even if the accelerator pedal is partially depressed. However, it will be cancelled if the accelerator pedal is fully depressed.

■ How the system works

When to use



The front wide view camera is located behind the rearview mirror.



The system starts monitoring the roadway ahead when your vehicle speed is about 5 km/h or above and will search for a vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or moving bicycle in front of you.

The CMBS activates when:

- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or moving bicycle detected in front of you becomes about 5 km/h and over with a chance of a collision.
- Your vehicle drives at about 30 km/h or less and there is a chance of in frontal collision with a detected oncoming vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or moving bicycle when you turn left^{*1}/right^{*2} at an intersection.
- Your vehicle speed is about 100 km/h or less and the system determines there is a chance of a collision with:
 - An oncoming or stationary vehicle detected in front of you.
 - A pedestrian or moving bicycle detected in front of you.
 - A vehicle approaching from the side in front of you.

The CMBS will be cancelled when your vehicle stops or the system determines there no longer is the potential for a collision.

The CMBS may also be cancelled when a driver operates the steering wheel and the brake or accelerator pedal to avoid a collision.

*1: Left-hand drive models

*2: Right-hand drive models

▶▶ How the system works

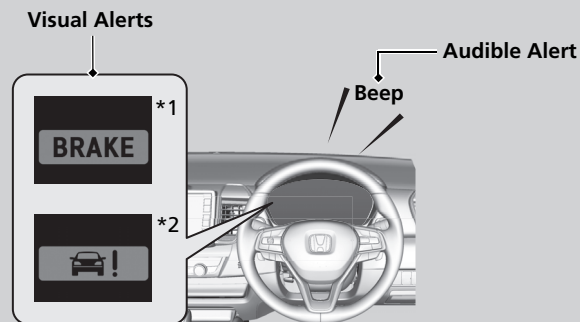
The front wide view camera in the CMBS is also designed to detect pedestrians. However, this pedestrian detection feature may not activate or may not detect a pedestrian in front of your vehicle under certain conditions. Refer to the ones indicating the pedestrian detection limitations from the list.

➡ **CMBS Conditions and Limitations** P. 257

■ When the system activates

The system provides visual and audible alerts of a possible collision, and stops if the collision is avoided.

- ▶ Take appropriate action to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.)



You can change the distance (**Long/Normal/Short**^{*1}, **Far/Normal/Near**^{*2}) between vehicles at which the system's earliest collision alert will come on.

➡ **Settings** P. 110, 133

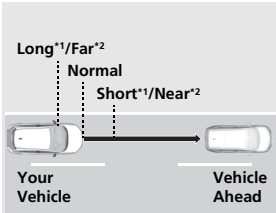
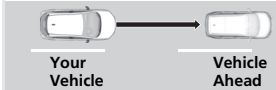

When in **Long**^{*1}/**Far**^{*2}, visual and audible alerts come on at a longer distance from a vehicle ahead than in **Normal** setting, and in **Short**^{*1}/**Near**^{*2}, at a shorter distance than in **Normal**.

*1 : Left-hand drive models

*2 : Right-hand drive models

Collision Alert Stages

The system has three alert stages for a possible collision. However, depending on circumstances, the CMBS may not go through all of the stages before initiating the last stage.

Distance between vehicles		CMBS		
		The sensors detect a vehicle	Audible & Visual WARNINGS	Braking
Stage one		There is a risk of a collision with the vehicle ahead of you.	<p>The visual alert flashes.</p> <p>If the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you continues to decrease, the audible alert sounds in addition to the visual alert flashing.</p> <p>▶ The collision warning distance can be changed.</p> <p>🔧 Settings P. 110, 133</p>	—
Stage two		The risk of a collision has increased, time to respond is reduced.	Visual and audible alerts.	Lightly applied
Stage three		The CMBS determines that a collision is unavoidable.		Forcefully applied

*1:Left-hand drive models

*2:Right-hand drive models

■ CMBS On and Off

You can turn the system on and off using the driver information interface.

➤ **Switching the Display** P. 102, 123

➤ **Safety Support** P. 108, 131

The CMBS is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

➤ Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

You cannot turn the CMBS off while driving.

The CMBS may automatically shut off, and the safety support indicator (amber) and Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) indicator (amber) will come and stay on under certain conditions.

➤ **CMBS Conditions and Limitations** P. 257

The CMBS is not activated for about 15 seconds after the engine has been started.

The Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, vehicle stability assist (VSA) **OFF**, Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS), Road Departure Mitigation, and safety support indicator may come on in amber along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

■ CMBS Conditions and Limitations

In the following situations, the front wide view camera may be unable to correctly detect vehicles, pedestrians, moving bicycles, or road conditions, potentially causing the CMBS to operate improperly.

📷 **Front Wide View Camera** P. 310

■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- There is little contrast between objects and the background.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto vehicles (including motorcycles), pedestrians, moving bicycles, or road surfaces.
- Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as vehicles and pedestrians.
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, vehicles [including motorcycles], pedestrians, or moving bicycles may not be illuminated).

■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).
- Driving on curvy, winding, or undulating roads.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.

📷 CMBS Conditions and Limitations

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if you find any unusual behaviour of the system (e.g. the warning message appears too frequently).

■ Vehicle conditions

- Tyre chains* are installed.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- The front wide view camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film on the windscreen.
- The inside of the windscreen is fogged.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre*, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- The suspension has been modified.
- Driving with the parking brake applied.
- Camera vision is blocked by drops of water from the window washer, or by the wiper blades.
- Operation of the vehicle is unstable due to a slippery road, etc.

■ **Examples of limitations on the correct detection of the front wide view camera due to the condition of the vehicle ahead of you, oncoming vehicles, vehicles approaching from the side, pedestrians, or moving bicycles**

- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, vehicle approaching from the side, pedestrian, or moving bicycle ahead of you is too short.
- The vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, vehicle approaching from the side, pedestrian, or moving bicycle suddenly cuts in front of or jumps out in front of you.
- A bicycle or sideways-facing vehicle is stopped.
- The oncoming vehicle or vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you is sideways or facing diagonally.
- When the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, vehicle approaching from the side, pedestrian, or moving bicycle blends in with the background, preventing the system from recognising it.
- When several pedestrians are moving ahead of you in a group.
- When several bicycles are moving ahead of you in a group.
- When a pedestrian or moving bicycle crosses the road too quickly.
- A pedestrian or moving bicycle approaches from the opposite direction.
- The headlights of the vehicle ahead of you or oncoming vehicle are lit on one side or not lit on either side in a dark place.
- When part of a pedestrian (heads, limbs, etc.) is hidden by a luggage.
- When a pedestrian is bent over or squatting, when their hands are raised, or they are running.
- When the pedestrian is shorter than about 1 metre or taller than about 2 metres in height.
- When the pedestrian is pushing a stroller or bicycle.
- A vehicle is approaching diagonally from the side.

⌘ Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

Make sure that all the tyres are of the same specified size, type and brand, and that they are evenly worn. If you use tyres of different sizes, types, brands, or degree of wear, the system may not work properly.

Do not modify the suspension. Altering the height of the vehicle may prevent the system from working properly.

- A specially-shaped vehicle (such as a tank lorry or a lorry without a luggage) is approaching from the side.
- A vehicle approaching from the side is driving on a curve or hill.

■ Examples of other limitations on detection or system operation

- When the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you is a small motorcycle, motorcycle with a sidecar, wheelchair, three-wheeled vehicle, or other specially shaped vehicle.
- When a vehicle is lower in the rear than the front such as lorries that are not carrying a load, or a narrow vehicle.
- When the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrian or moving bicycle is not in front of the vehicle.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrian or moving bicycle is significantly large.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle, pedestrian, or moving bicycle approaching from the side is significantly large.
- When the vehicle (including motorcycles) or moving bicycle in front of you slows suddenly.
- When the driver operates the brake pedal and steering wheel to avoid a collision.
- When you approach the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrians or moving bicycles while accelerating rapidly or operating the steering wheel (except when turning left*¹/right*² at an intersection etc.)*³.

*1: Left-hand drive models

*2: Right-hand drive models

*3: When there is a possibility of a frontal collision with the oncoming vehicle while turning left*¹/right*², the CMBS is activated. However, it may not be activated if you suddenly turn the steering wheel.

- When the moving bicycle is a child-sized bicycle, folding bicycle, three-wheeler or other bicycle with small tyres, or a long bicycle like a tandem bicycle.
- When the front wide view camera cannot correctly identify the shape of the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, vehicle approaching from the side, pedestrian, or moving bicycle.
- When a vehicle (including motorcycles) that has an extremely high minimum ground clearance is ahead of you or approaching from the side.

■ Automatic shutoff

The CMBS may automatically shut itself off and the safety support indicator (amber) and Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) indicator (amber) come and stay on when:

- You drive off-road or on a mountain road, or curved and winding road for an extended period.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving with the parking brake applied.
- The front wide view camera temperature gets too high.
- The front wide view camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film on the windscreen.
- An abnormal tyre condition is detected (incorrect tyre size, flat tyre, etc.).

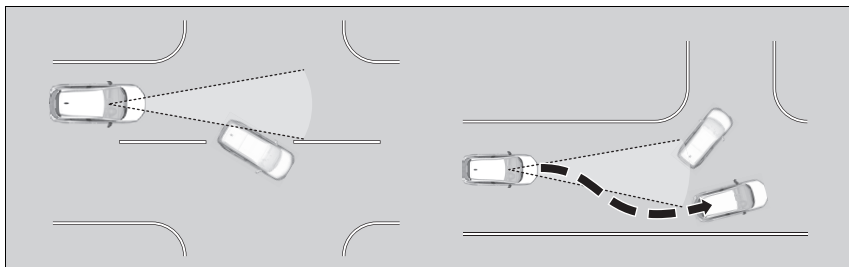
Once the conditions that caused the CMBS to shut off improve or are addressed (e.g., cleaning), the system comes back on.

■ With Little Chance of a Collision

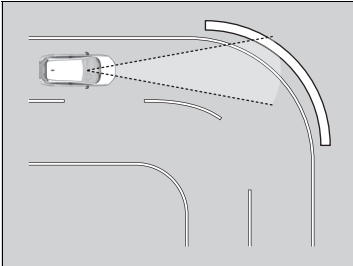
Even if there is little chance of a collision, the CMBS may activate under the following conditions.

Also, the system may activate if it detects a possibility of collision with pedestrians, moving bicycles, or vehicles.

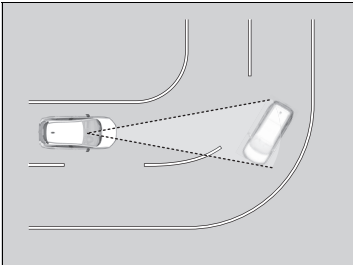
- Your vehicle approaches or passes another vehicle that is making a left or right turn.
- Your vehicle approaches another vehicle ahead of you and you change lanes to pass.



- When your vehicle approaches vehicles, pedestrians, or moving bicycles.
- When vehicles, pedestrians, or moving bicycles are passing in front of you.
- When you drive under a low structure or through a narrow gate at high speed.
- When there are traffic signs or structures such as guard rails beside the road along a curve.



- When driving through curves, your vehicle comes to a point where the oncoming vehicle is right in front of you.



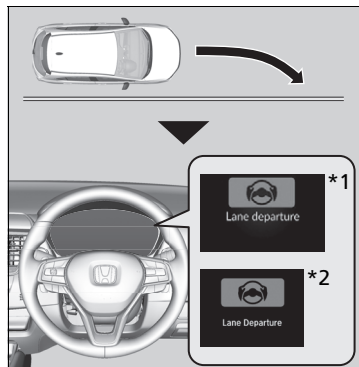
- When approaching stationary vehicles or walls, such as when parking.

- A vehicle approaches from the side as it is driving through a curve.
- You pass by a vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or bicycle that is turning left or right.
- You pass in front of a vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or bicycle that is approaching from the side.
- A vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or bicycle turns left or right while approaching your vehicle from the side.
- You attempt to pass in front of a vehicle (including motorcycles) or bicycle while you are turning left or right.
- A vehicle (including motorcycles) or bicycle is attempting to pass in front of your vehicle while you are turning left or right.
- A vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or bicycle enters the path of your vehicle and stops in front of you.
- When you are turning left or right, a crossing pedestrian enters the path of your vehicle and stops in front of you.
- You pass close by the side of a vehicle parked on the street.

Road Departure Mitigation System

Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle unintentionally crossing over detected lane markings and/or leaving the roadway altogether.

How the System Works



The front camera located behind the rearview mirror monitors left and right lane markings (in white or yellow). If your vehicle is getting too close to detected lane markings without a turn signal activated, the system, in addition to a visual alert, applies steering torque and alerts you with rapid vibrations on the steering wheel, to help you remain within the detected lane.

📖 **Settings** P. 110, 133

As a visual alert, the **Lane departure**^{*1}/**Lane Departure**^{*2} message appears on the driver information interface.

The system cancels assisting operations when you turn the steering wheel to avoid crossing over detected lane markings.

*1: Models with A-type meter

*2: Models with B-type meter

⚠ Road Departure Mitigation System

Important Safety Reminder

Like all assistance systems, the Road Departure Mitigation system has limitations.

Overreliance on the Road Departure Mitigation system may result in a collision. It is always your responsibility to keep the vehicle within your driving lane.

The Road Departure Mitigation system only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The Road Departure Mitigation system may not detect all lane markings or lane or roadway departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed and lane marker condition. It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

The Road Departure Mitigation system is not activated for about 15 seconds after the engine has been started.

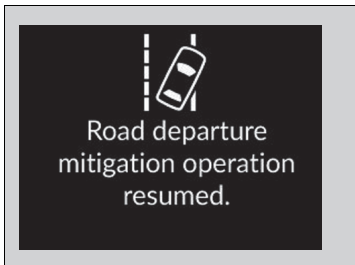
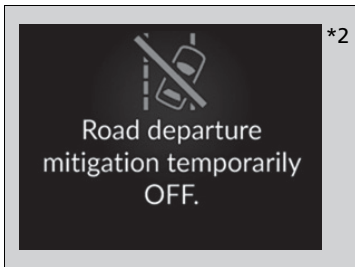
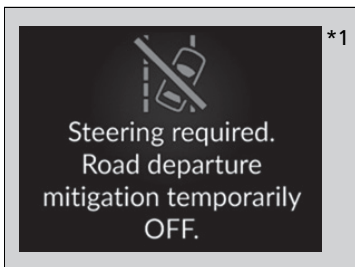
You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

📖 **Front Wide View Camera** P. 310

The Road Departure Mitigation system may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:

📖 **Road Departure Mitigation system Conditions and Limitations** P. 270

Models with A-type meter



If the system operates several times without detecting driver response, the system beeps to alert you. After that, the Road Departure Mitigation steering assist is temporarily stopped, and the system will only alert you with the warning sound.

After a few minutes, the message to the left is displayed and the Road Departure Mitigation system is fully restored.

*1: Left-hand drive models
*2: Right-hand drive models

▶▶ Road Departure Mitigation System

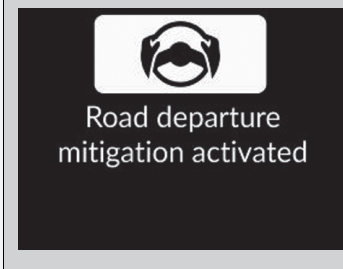
There are times when you may not notice the Road Departure Mitigation system functions due to your operation of the vehicle, or road surface conditions.

You can change the settings for the Road Departure Mitigation system.

If LKAS is off, the message below may appear if the system has determined that there is a possibility of your vehicle crossing over detected lane markings.

▶ **Settings** P. 110, 133

Models with A-type meter



Models with B-type meter



If the system operates several times without detecting driver response, the system beeps to alert you. After that, the Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF indicator comes on, the Road Departure Mitigation steering assist is temporarily stopped, and the system will only alert you with the warning sound.

After a few minutes, the Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF indicator goes off and the Road Departure Mitigation system is fully restored.

▶▶ Road Departure Mitigation System

Models with B-type meter



■ How the System Activates

The system activates when all of the following conditions are met:

- The lane markings is white (yellow).
- The vehicle is travelling between about 72 and 180 km/h.
- The vehicle is on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The system makes a determination that the driver is not actively accelerating, braking, or steering.

▶▶ How the System Activates

The Road Departure Mitigation system may automatically shut off and the safety support indicator (amber) and Road Departure Mitigation indicator (amber) come and stay on.

▶ Indicators P. 84

The Road Departure Mitigation system function can be impacted when the vehicle is:

- Driven on the inside edge of a curve, or outside of a lane.
- Driven in a narrow lane.

■ Road Departure Mitigation system On and Off

You can turn the system on and off using the driver information interface.

📺 **Switching the Display** P. 102, 123

📺 **Safety Support** P. 108, 131

The Road Departure Mitigation system is in the previously selected on or off setting each time you start the engine.

📺 Road Departure Mitigation system On and Off

When you have selected **Warning only**^{*1}/**Warning Only**^{*2}, the system does not operate the steering wheel.

📺 **Settings** P. 110, 133

The Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, vehicle stability assist (VSA) **OFF**, Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS), Road Departure Mitigation, and safety support indicator may come on in amber along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the battery.

Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

*1: Models with A-type meter

*2: Models with B-type meter

■ Road Departure Mitigation system Conditions and Limitations

The system may not properly detect lane markings and the position of your vehicle under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below.

■ Environmental conditions

- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Shadows of adjacent objects (trees, buildings, guard rails, vehicles, etc.) are parallel to white (or yellow) lines.
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, lane lines, the road surface, or oncoming vehicles may not be illuminated).
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short, and lane lines and the road surface are not visible.

■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or old lane markings.
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines, such as at an intersection or crosswalk.
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.
- Part of the lane markings are hidden by an object, such as a vehicle.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognised as white (or yellow) lines.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
- Driving on roads with double lane lines.
- Driving on snowy or slippery roads.
- Passing through a junction.
- The pavement is only partially visible due to snow or puddles on the road.
- Driving on unpaved or rutted roads.
- White (or yellow) lines are not recognised correctly due to road conditions such as curves, twists, or hills.

■ Vehicle conditions

- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front of the camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film on the windscreen.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- When the driver operates the brake pedal and steering wheel.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre*, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- Tyre chains* are installed.
- The suspension has been modified.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

Helps to maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

When ACC slows your vehicle by applying the brakes, your vehicle's brake lights will illuminate.

When to use



The front wide view camera is located behind the rearview mirror.



■ Vehicle speed for ACC: Desired speed in a range above roughly 30 km/h

Continuously variable transmission models

■ Shift position for ACC: In **D** or **S**

Manual transmission models

■ Shift position for ACC: In **2** or higher position

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of ACC can lead to a crash.

Use ACC only when driving on motorways and in good road and weather conditions.

⚠ WARNING

ACC has limited braking capability. When your vehicle speed drops below 25 km/h, ACC will automatically cancel and no longer will apply your vehicle's brakes. Always be prepared to apply the brake pedal when conditions require.

Important Reminder

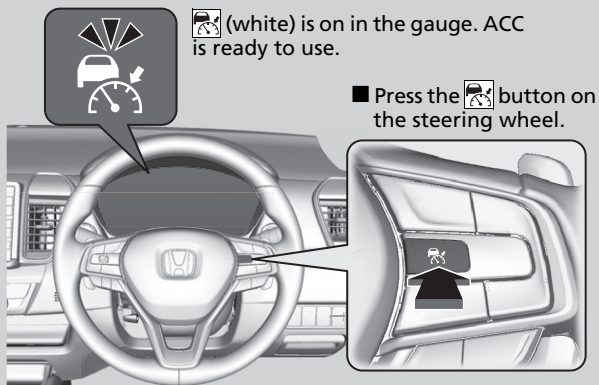
As with any system, there are limits to ACC. Use the brake pedal whenever necessary, and always keep a safe interval between your vehicle and other vehicles.

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

➡ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 310

■ How to activate the system


How to use



▶ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

ACC may not work properly under certain conditions.

▶ **ACC Conditions and Limitations** P. 281

When not using ACC: Turn off adaptive cruise by pressing the  button.

Do not use ACC under the following conditions:

- On roads with frequent lane-change or continuous stop and go traffic, ACC cannot keep an appropriate distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you.
- On roads with sharp turns.
- On roads with toll collection facilities or other objects between lanes of traffic, or in parking areas, or facilities with drive through access.
- On roads with bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.), ACC may not detect the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you properly.
- On roads with slippery or icy surfaces. The wheels may spin out and your vehicle may lose the control on the condition.
- On roads with steep uphill or steep downhill slopes.
- On roads with undulating slopes.

⌘ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

The Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, vehicle stability assist (VSA) **OFF**, Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS), Road Departure Mitigation, and safety support indicator may come on in amber along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

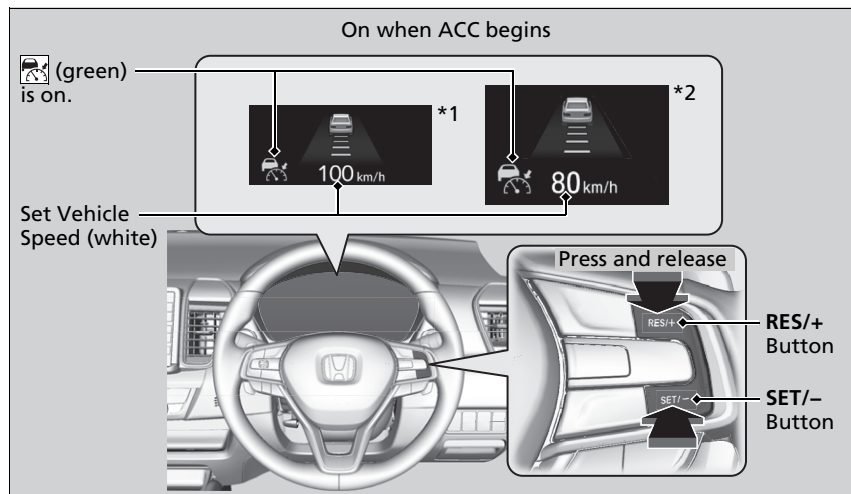
Manual transmission models

When the engine speed slows down, try to downshift.

When the engine speed goes up, try to upshift.

You can maintain the set speed if you change gear within five seconds.

■ To Set the Vehicle Speed

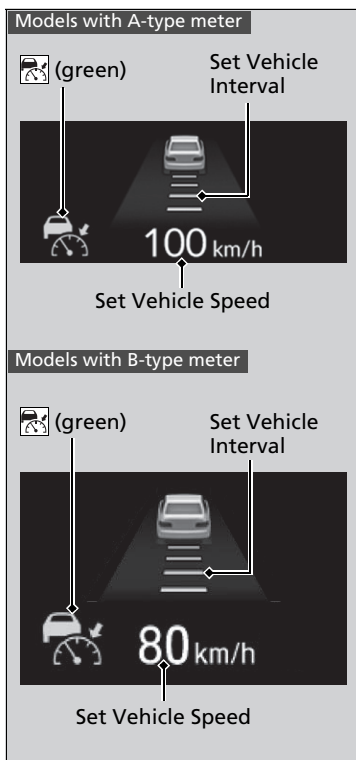


Take your foot off the pedal and press the **RES/+** or **SET/-** button when you reach the desired speed.

The moment you release the **RES/+** or **SET/-** button, the set speed is fixed, and ACC begins.

*1 : Models with A-type meter

*2 : Models with B-type meter



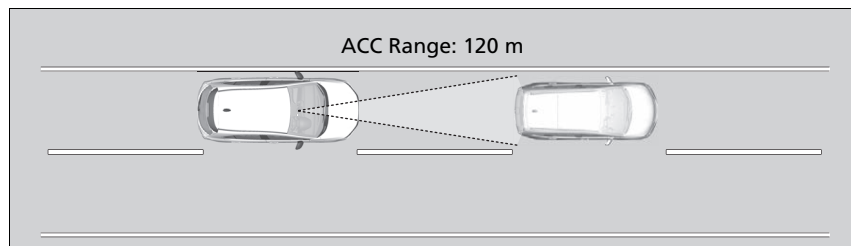
When ACC starts operating, the vehicle icon, interval bars, and set speed appear on the gauge.

■ When in Operation

■ There is a vehicle ahead

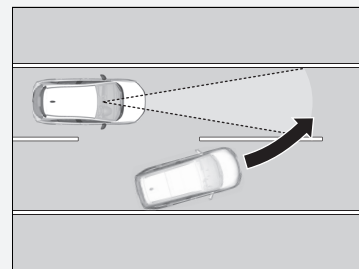
ACC monitors if a vehicle ahead of you enters the ACC range. If a vehicle is detected doing so, the ACC system maintains or decelerates your vehicle's set speed in order to keep the vehicle's set following-interval from the vehicle ahead.

📌 **To Set or Change Following-interval** P. 286

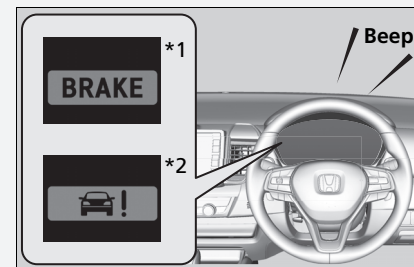


▶ When in Operation

If the vehicle ahead of you slows down abruptly, or if another vehicle cuts in front of you, the beeper sound and a message appears on the driver information interface.

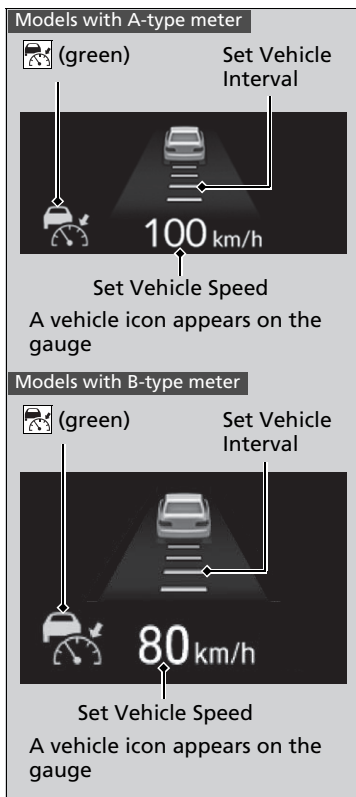


Depress the brake pedal, and keep an appropriate interval from the vehicle ahead.



*1: Left-hand drive models

*2: Right-hand drive models



When a vehicle whose speed is slower than your set speed comes in or cuts in front of you and is detected by the camera, your vehicle starts to slow down.

When in Operation

Even if the interval between your vehicle and the vehicle detected ahead is short, ACC may start accelerating your vehicle under the following circumstances:

- The vehicle ahead of you is going at almost the same speed as, or faster than, your vehicle.
- A vehicle that cuts in front of you is going faster than your vehicle, gradually increasing the interval between the vehicles.

You can also set the system to beep when a vehicle detected in front of you comes in and goes out of the ACC detecting range.

A vehicle detect beep on and off can be selected.

➤ **Settings** P. 110, 133

Limitations

You may need to use the brake to maintain a safe interval when using ACC. Additionally, ACC may not work properly under certain conditions.

➤ **ACC Conditions and Limitations** P. 281

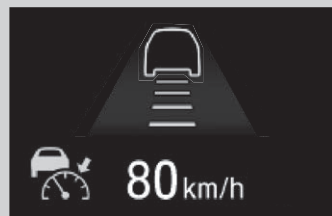
■ There is no vehicle ahead

Models with A-type meter



A vehicle icon with line contour appears on the gauge.

Models with B-type meter



A vehicle icon with line contour appears on the gauge.

■ When you depress the accelerator pedal

You can temporarily increase the vehicle speed. In this case, there is no audible or visual alert even if a vehicle is in the ACC range.

ACC stays on unless you cancel it. Once you release the accelerator pedal, the system resumes the set speed.

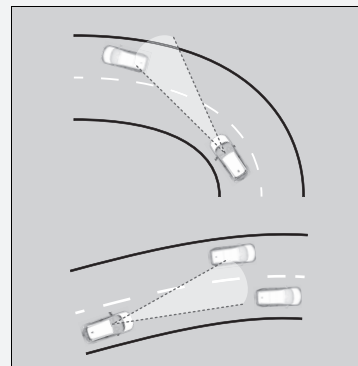
Your vehicle maintains the set speed without having to keep your foot on the brake or accelerator pedal.

If there previously was a vehicle detected ahead that kept your vehicle from travelling at the set speed, ACC accelerates your vehicle to the set speed, and then maintains it.

While driving down steep hills, ACC brakes to inhibit excessive acceleration for maintaining the set speed. However, the vehicle speed may become faster than the set speed.

▶▶ When in Operation

- ACC may temporarily control the interval between your vehicle and the vehicle in adjacent lane or surroundings of your vehicle depending on the road conditions (e.g., curves) or vehicle conditions (e.g., operating the steering wheel or the vehicle location in the lane).



- When the vehicle ahead of you moves away, such as when entering an interchange or rest area, ACC may continue to maintain the set following-interval for a short time.

■ ACC Conditions and Limitations

The system may automatically shut off under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below. Other conditions may reduce some of the ACC functions.

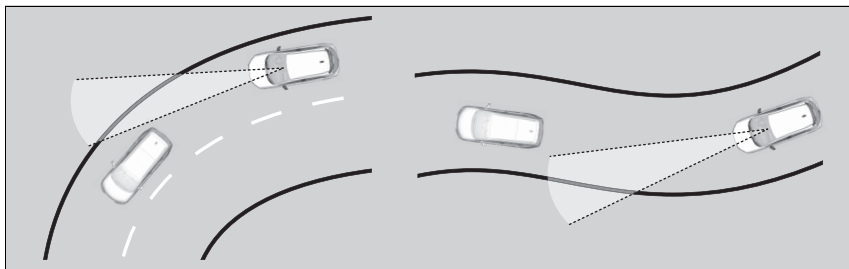
📷 **Front Wide View Camera** P. 310

■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Strong light is reflected onto vehicles or road surfaces.
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, the whole vehicle may not be illuminated).
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).

■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on curvy, winding, undulating, or sloping roads.



- Driving on rutted roads (snowy or unpaved roads, etc.).
- Puddles or a film of water is on the road surface.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.

■ Vehicle conditions

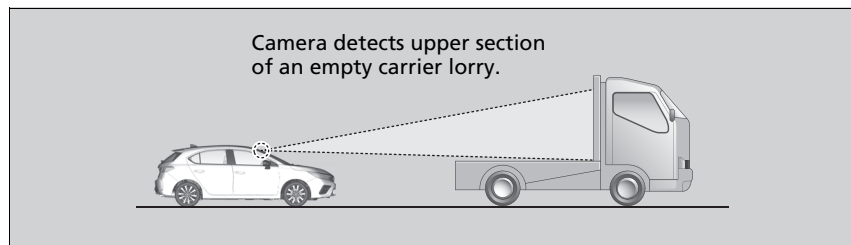
- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- Tyre chains* are installed.
- The front of the camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film of the windscreen.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre*, etc.).
- The suspension has been modified.

■ **Examples of conditions under which the camera may not correctly detect the vehicle ahead of you**

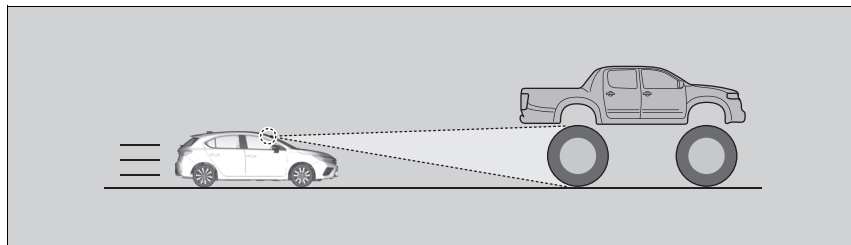
- A vehicle suddenly crosses in front of you.
- The interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short.
- When the vehicle ahead of you blends in with the background, preventing the system from recognising it.
- The headlights of the vehicle ahead of you are lit on one side or not lit on either side in a dark place.

■ Examples of conditions under which the system may not work properly

- A vehicle ahead of you stops and the speed difference between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is significantly large.
- When the vehicle ahead of you slows suddenly.
- When the vehicle ahead of you is a three-wheeled vehicle or specially shaped vehicle.
- When a vehicle is lower in the rear than the front such as lorries that are not carrying a load, or a narrow vehicle.



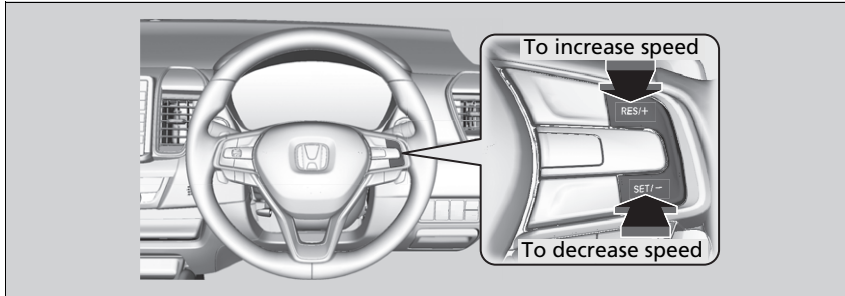
- When your vehicle or the vehicle ahead of you is driving on the edge of the lane.
- When the vehicle ahead of you is a narrow vehicle such as a motorcycle.
- When the minimum ground clearance of a vehicle ahead of you is extremely high.



- When the camera cannot correctly identify the shape of the vehicle ahead of you.

■ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Increase or decrease the vehicle speed using the **RES/+** or **SET/-** button on the steering wheel.



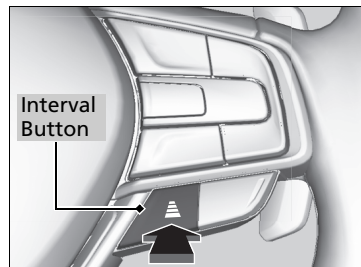
- Each time you press the **RES/+** or **SET/-** button, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1 km/h accordingly.
- If you press and hold the **RES/+** or **SET/-** button, the vehicle speed increases or decreases by about 10 km/h accordingly.

▶▶ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

If a vehicle detected ahead is going at a speed slower than your increased set speed, ACC may not accelerate your vehicle. This is to maintain the set interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.

When you depress the accelerator pedal and then push and release the **RES/+** or **SET/-** button, the current speed of the vehicle is set.

■ To Set or Change Following-interval








Press the interval button to change the ACC following-interval.

Each time you press the button, the following-interval (the interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of you) setting cycles through extra long, long, middle, and short following-intervals.

Determine the most appropriate following-interval setting based on your specific driving conditions. Be sure to adhere to any following-interval requirements set by local regulation.

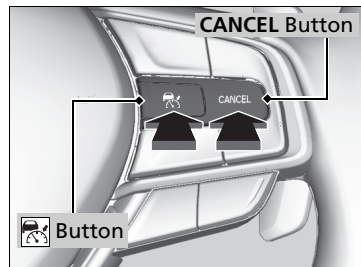
The higher your vehicle’s following-speed is, the longer the short, middle, long or extra long following-interval becomes. See the following examples for your reference.

Following-interval		When the Set Speed is:	
		80 km/h	104 km/h
Short		26.6 metres 1.2 sec	33.7 metres 1.2 sec
Middle		34.6 metres 1.6 sec	44.9 metres 1.6 sec
Long		44.0 metres 2.0 sec	57.1 metres 2.0 sec
Extra Long		53.6 metres 2.4 sec	70.0 metres 2.4 sec







To Set or Change Following-interval

The driver must in all circumstances preserve a sufficient braking interval from the vehicle which precedes it and be aware that minimum intervals or times of spacing can be provided by the provisions of the Motorway Code locally applicable and that it is the driver’s responsibility to respect those laws.



■ To Cancel



To cancel ACC, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
 - ▶ The  indicator (green) on the gauge changes to the  indicator (white).
- Press the  button.
 - ▶  indicator (green) goes off.
- Depress the brake pedal while the vehicle is moving forward.
 - ▶ The  indicator (green) on the gauge changes to the  indicator (white).

Manual transmission models


- Depress the clutch pedal for five seconds or more.
 - ▶ The  indicator (green) on the gauge changes to the  indicator (white).

▶▶ To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed: After you have cancelled ACC, you can activate the ACC with the prior set speed displayed on the gauge (in grey) by pressing the **RES/+** button.

When you turn the ACC off by pressing the **CANCEL** button or depressing the brake pedal, the prior set speed is displayed on the gauge in grey.

When pressing the **RES/+** button, the ACC is activated with displayed speed.

If the  indicator (white) is displayed and you press the **RES/+** button, but no prior set speed (in grey) is displayed, the speed will be set to your vehicle's current speed.

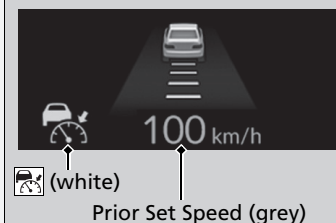
■ Automatic cancellation

The beeper sounds and a message appears on the driver information interface when ACC is automatically cancelled. Any of these conditions may cause the ACC to automatically cancel:

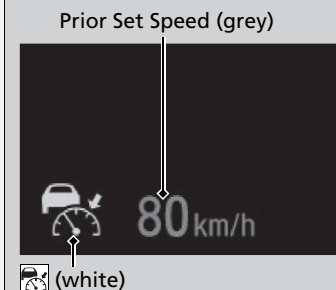
- Bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.)
- The vehicle ahead of you cannot be detected.
- An abnormal tyre condition is detected, or the tyres are skidding.
- Driving on a mountainous road for extended periods, or driving off road.
- Abrupt steering wheel movement.
- When the ABS, VSA, or CMBS is activated.
- When the VSA system indicator comes on.
- When you manually apply the parking brake.
- When vehicle speed is less than 25 km/h.
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- When the detected vehicle within the ACC range is too close to your vehicle.
- When accelerating rapidly.
- The front of the camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film on the windscreen.
- The vehicle is loaded heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- When passing through a dark place, such as tunnel.
- When the parking brake and brake system indicator (amber) comes on.
- The vehicle has repeatedly applied the brakes to maintain the set speed (for example, you are descending a long slope).
- When the system doesn't detect any driving actions from the driver for a certain amount of time while the LKAS is also activated.



▶▶ To Cancel

Models with A-type meter



Models with B-type meter



The set speed cannot be set or resumed when ACC has been turned off using the  button. Press the  button to activate the system, then set the desired speed.

If the vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h you cannot resume.

Continued

Manual transmission models

- Ignoring shift up or down indication shown in the gauge will cancel the ACC after about 10 seconds.
- The engine speed goes into the tachometer red zone.
- The engine speed goes to below 1,000 rpm.
- You shift into neutral temporarily when shifting into a higher or lower gear.
- When the transmission is put into **N** without depressing the clutch pedal.

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

Provides steering input to help to keep the vehicle in the middle of a detected lane and provides tactile, audible and visual alerts if the vehicle is detected drifting out of its lane.

⚠ Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

Important Safety Reminders

The LKAS is for your convenience only. It is not an autonomous driving system and always requires driver attention and control. The system does not work if you take your hands off the steering wheel or fail to steer the vehicle.

The LKAS is convenient when it is used on motorways or a dual carriage way.

Do not place objects on the instrument panel. Objects may reflect on the windscreen and prevent correct detection of the traffic lanes.

The LKAS only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The LKAS may not detect all lane markings or lane departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed, and lane marker condition. It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

The LKAS may not function as designed while driving in frequent stop and go traffic, or on roads with sharp curves.

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

➡ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 310

The LKAS may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:

➡ **LKAS Conditions and Limitations** P. 300

Continued

■ Steering input assist

The system applies torque to the steering to keep the vehicle between the left and right lane lines. The applied torque becomes stronger as the vehicle gets closer to either of the lane lines.



■ Front wide view camera
Monitors the lane lines



■ Tactile, audible and visual alerts

Rapid vibrations on the steering wheel, audible and a warning display alert you that the vehicle is drifting out of a detected lane.

When you operate the turn signals to change lanes, the system is suspended, and resumes after the signals are off.

If you make a lane change without operating the turn signals, the LKAS alerts activate, and torque is applied to the steering.

*1 : Models with A-type meter

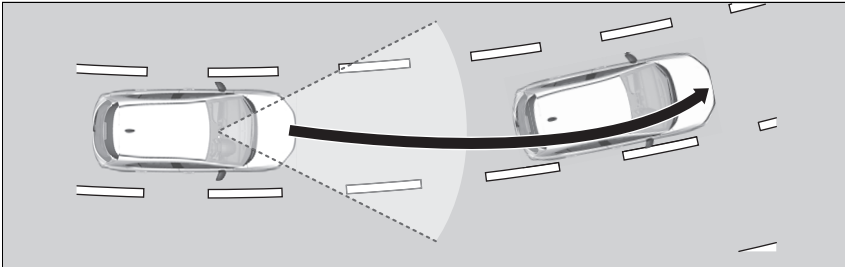
*2 : Models with B-type meter

▶ Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

When it fails to detect lanes, the system will temporarily be cancelled. When a lane is detected, the system will recover automatically.

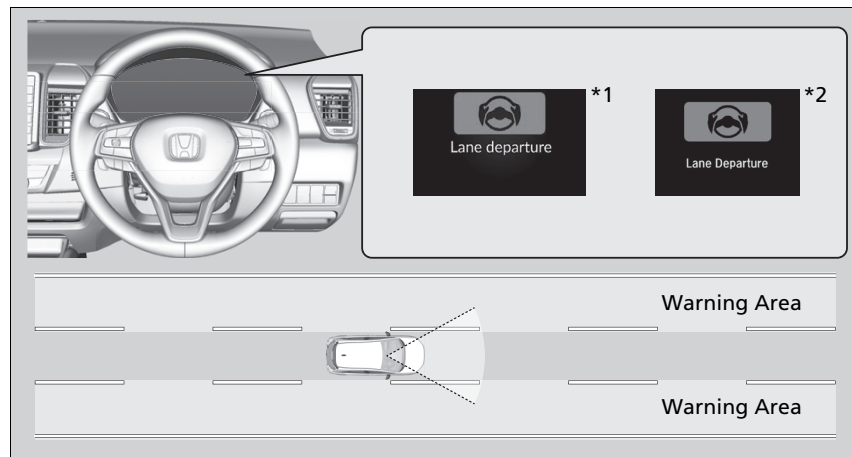
■ Lane Keep Support Function

Provides assistance to keep the vehicle in the centre of the lane. When the vehicle nears a white or yellow line, steering force of the electric power steering will become stronger.



■ Lane Departure Warning Function

When the vehicle enters the warning area, the LKAS alerts you with slight steering wheel vibration, and audible and visual warnings.



*1 : Models with A-type meter

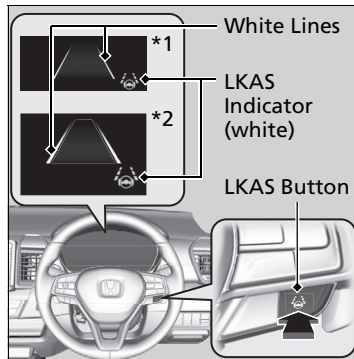
*2 : Models with B-type meter

■ When the System can be Used

The system can be used when the following conditions are met.

- The lane in which you are driving has detectable lane markers on both sides, and your vehicle is in the centre of the lane.
- The vehicle is travelling between about 72 and 180 km/h.
- You are driving on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The brake pedal is not depressed.

■ How to activate the system



1. Press the LKAS button.

- ▶ LKAS indicator (white) appears on the gauge.
The system is standby.
- ▶ If traffic lane lines are detected, white lines appear on the gauge.

▶▶ When the System can be Used

If the vehicle drifts towards either left or right lane line due to the system applying torque, turn off the LKAS and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Follow the points below to properly activate the system:

- Always keep the windscreen around the camera clean.
- When cleaning the windscreen, be careful not to apply windscreen cleanser to the camera lens.
- Do not touch the camera lens.
- Do not attach a sticker to the area around the camera.

If LKAS button is pressed when the system can be used, LKAS is on without standby.

*1: Models with A-type meter

*2: Models with B-type meter

Models with A-type meter

Green Lines



LKAS Indicator (green)

Models with B-type meter

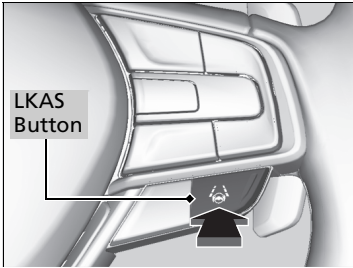
Green Lines



LKAS Indicator (green)

2. Keep your vehicle near the centre of the lane while driving.
 - ▶ The LKAS indicator changes from white to green, and white lines change to green once the system starts operating after detecting the left and right lane markings.

■ To Cancel



Press the LKAS button.

The LKAS is turned off every time you stop the engine, even if you turned it on the last time you drove the vehicle.

Models with A-type meter

White Lines



LKAS Indicator (white)

Models with B-type meter

White Lines



LKAS Indicator (white)

When the LKAS is suspended, green lines on the gauge change to white lines or disappear, and the beeper sounds (if activated).

■ The system operation is suspended if you:

- Decrease the vehicle speed to about 64 km/h or less.
 - ▶ Increasing the vehicle speed to about 72 km/h or more resumes the LKAS.
- Depress the brake pedal.
 - ▶ The LKAS resumes and starts detecting the lane lines again once you release the brake pedal.
- Your vehicle is driving to the right or the left of the lane.

▶▶ The system operation is suspended if you:

You can change the setting for the LKAS. LKAS suspended beep on and off can be selected.

🔧 **Settings** P. 110, 133

■ **The LKAS may be automatically suspended when:**

- The system fails to detect lane lines.
 - The steering wheel is turned quickly.
 - You fail to steer the vehicle.
 - Driving through a sharp curve.
 - Driving at a speed in excess of approximately 185 km/h.
 - The ABS or VSA system engages.
- Once these conditions no longer exist, the LKAS automatically resumes.

■ **The LKAS may be automatically cancelled when:**

In the following cases, traffic lane lines may disappear on the gauge, the beeper may sound, and the LKAS may be automatically cancelled:

- The camera temperature gets extremely high.
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windscreen, is dirty.

■ LKAS Conditions and Limitations

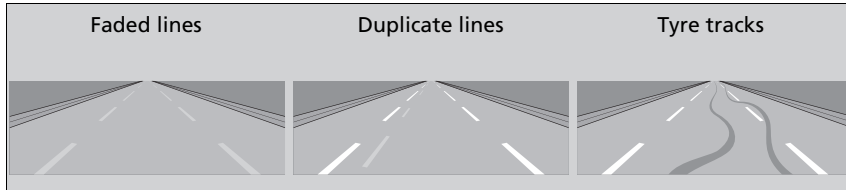
The system may not detect lane markings and therefore may not keep the vehicle in the middle of the lane under certain conditions, including the following:

■ Environmental conditions

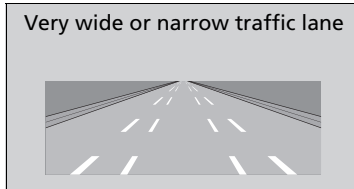
- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Shadows of adjacent objects (trees, buildings, guard rails, vehicles, etc.) are parallel to white (or yellow) lines.
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, lane lines or the road surface may not be illuminated).
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short, and lane lines and the road surface are not visible.
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.

■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or old lane markings.

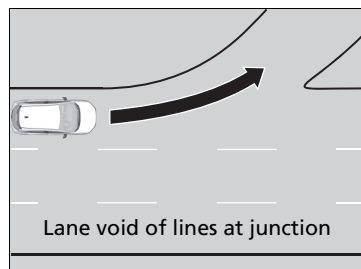


- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines, such as at an intersection or crosswalk.
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.



- Part of the lane markings are hidden by an object, such as a vehicle.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognised as white (or yellow) lines.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.

- Driving on roads with double lane lines.
- Driving on snowy or slippery roads.
- The pavement is only partially visible due to snow or puddles on the road.
- There is a film of water or puddles on the road surface.
- White (or yellow) lines are not recognised correctly due to road conditions such as curves, twists, or hills.
- Driving on unpaved or rutted roads.
- Passing through a junction.



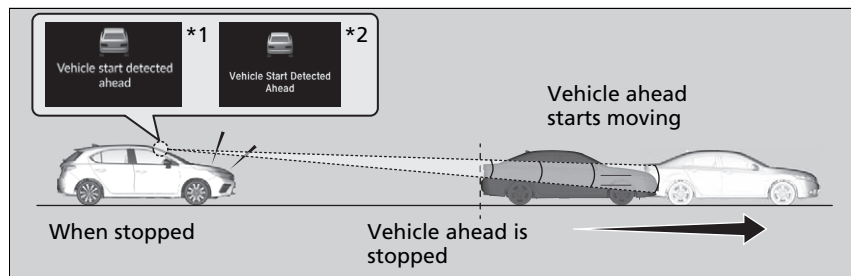
■ Vehicle conditions

- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front of the camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film on the windscreen.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre*, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- The suspension has been modified.
- Tyre chains* are installed.

* Not available on all models

Lead Car Departure Notification System

Informs you with visual and audible alerts when your vehicle is stopped even though the vehicle ahead of you has started moving.



▶▶ Lead Car Departure Notification System

⚠ WARNING

Lead Car Departure Notification System is an supplemental system that provides driving assistance. It is not a system that informs you if it is safe to start driving.

Improper use of this system may lead to a collision.

Always visually confirm the safety of your surroundings before driving the vehicle and maintain a safe following-interval when driving.

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

▶▶ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 310

Like other assistance systems, this system may not function properly depending on weather, environmental conditions, and so on.

*1: Models with A-type meter

*2: Models with B-type meter

■ How the system works

The system detects a stopped vehicle in front of you, on the condition that the vehicles are within 10 m of each other and both vehicles have been stopped for a period of time. When the detected vehicle moves but yours does not, the system will activate.

Continuously variable transmission models

■ When the shift position is in **D** or **S**

The system will work when the brake pedal is depressed.

■ When the shift position is in **N**

The system will work when the vehicle is stopped, the brake pedal is depressed, or the parking brake is in operation.

Manual transmission models

■ When the shift position is in any gear other than **R**

The system will work when the brake pedal is depressed, the parking brake is in operation.

You can choose from two system operation timing modes, **Normal** and **Early**.

➤ **Settings** P. 110, 133

In **Normal** mode, the system operates when the vehicle ahead of you has moved approximately 3 m from where it stopped.

In **Early** mode, the system operates as soon as movement has been detected.

⌘ Lead Car Departure Notification System

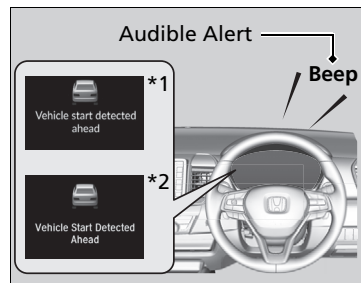
You can turn off the Lead Car Departure Notification System.

➤ **Settings** P. 110, 133

The Lead Car Departure Notification System will not activate while the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Indicator is on.

➤ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)** P. 273

■ When the System Activates



The beeper sounds and a message appears on the driver information interface when the system is activated.

*1 : Models with A-type meter

*2 : Models with B-type meter

■ Lead Car Departure Notification System Conditions and Limitations

In the following conditions, the system may or may not activate regardless of whether the vehicle ahead of you starts to move.

■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Strong light is reflected onto vehicles or road surfaces.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, the whole vehicle may not be illuminated).
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).

■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on curvy, winding, undulating, or sloping roads or immediately after turning to the left or right.

■ Vehicle conditions

- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- The vehicle is only stopped for a short time.
- The front of the camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film on the windscreen.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre*, etc.).
- The suspension has been modified.

■ Examples of conditions under which the camera may not correctly detect the vehicle ahead of you

- The vehicle ahead of you is only stopped for a short time.
- The space between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short.
- The vehicle ahead of you is moving too slowly.
- The vehicle ahead of you suddenly turns around or to the left or right.
- The vehicle ahead of you blends into the scenery and can't be detected.
- The vehicle ahead of you has only one or neither of their taillights on.

■ Examples of other limitations on detection

- There is a pedestrian, bicycle, motorcycle, or other specially-shaped vehicle in front of you.
- Another vehicle, pedestrian, or bicycle comes between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you.
- The vehicle ahead of you is not directly in front of you.

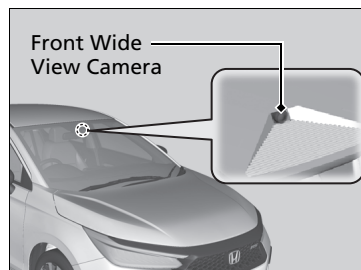
■ Examples of other limitations on system operation

- The camera cannot correctly detect the shape of the vehicle ahead of you.
- The vehicle ahead of you has very high ground clearance.
- The vehicle ahead of you, such as a lorry without a trailer, has a rear that is smaller than the front.

Front Wide View Camera

The camera, used in systems such as Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS), Road Departure Mitigation System, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS), Lead Car Departure Notification System, and auto high-beam system, is designed to detect an object that triggers any of the systems to operate its functions.

Camera Location and Handling Tips



This camera is located behind the rearview mirror.

To help to reduce the likelihood that high interior temperatures will cause the camera's sensing system to shut off, find a shady area or face the front of the vehicle away from the sun when parking. If you use a reflective sun shade, do not allow it to cover the camera housing. Covering the camera can concentrate heat on it.

Front Wide View Camera

Never apply a film or attach any objects to the windshield, the bonnet, or the front grille that could obstruct the camera's field of vision and cause the system to operate abnormally.

Scratches, nicks, and other damage to the windshield within the camera's field of vision can cause the system to operate abnormally. If this occurs, we recommend that you replace the windshield with a genuine Honda replacement windshield. Making even minor repairs within the camera's field of vision or installing an aftermarket replacement windshield may also cause the system to operate abnormally.

After replacing the windshield, have a dealer recalibrate the camera. Proper calibration of the camera is necessary for the system to operate properly.

Do not place an object on the top of the instrument panel. It may reflect onto the windshield and prevent the system from detecting lane lines properly.

Front Wide View Camera

If the **Some driver assist systems cannot operate: Camera temperature too high**^{*1}/**Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Camera Temperature Too High**^{*2} message appears:

- Use the climate control system to cool down the interior and, if necessary, also use demister mode with the airflow directed towards the camera.
- Start driving the vehicle to lower the windscreen temperature, which cools down the area around the camera.

Models with A-type meter

If the **Some driver assist system cannot operate: Clean front windshield or poor viewing condition**^{*3}/**Some driver assist systems cannot operate: Clean front windscreen or poor viewing condition**^{*4} message appears:

- Park your vehicle in a safe place, and make sure the windscreen is clean. Clean the windscreen if it is dirty. If the message does not disappear after driven for a while, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Models with B-type meter

If the **Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Clean Front Windshield Or Poor Viewing Condition**^{*3}/**Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Clean Front Windscreen Or Poor Viewing Condition**^{*4} message appears:

- Park your vehicle in a safe place, and make sure the windscreen is clean. Clean the windscreen if it is dirty. If the message does not disappear after driven for a while, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

*1: Models with A-type meter

*2: Models with B-type meter

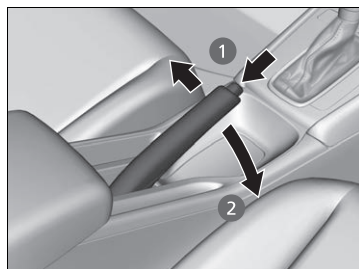
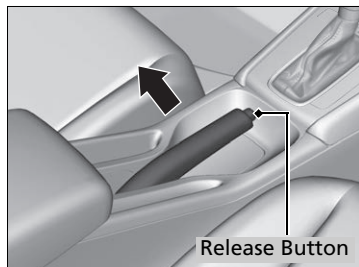
*3: Left-hand drive models

*4: Right-hand drive models

Brake System

Parking Brake

Use the parking brake to keep the vehicle stationary when parking.



To apply:

Pull the lever fully up without pressing the release button.

To release:

1. Pull the lever slightly, and press and hold the release button.
2. Lower the lever down all the way, then release the button.

Braking

Thai models

When you depress the brake pedal, you may hear a whirring sound from the engine compartment. This is because the brake system is in operation, and it is normal.

Parking Brake

NOTICE

Release the parking brake fully before driving. The rear brakes and axle can be damaged if you drive with the parking brake applied.

If you start driving without fully releasing the parking brake, a buzzer sounds as a warning, and **Release parking brake**^{*1}/**Release Parking Brake**^{*2} appears on the driver information interface.

Always apply the parking brake when parking.

*1: Models with A-type meter

*2: Models with B-type meter

Foot Brake

Indonesian models

Malaysian models with 16 inch wheel

Your vehicle is equipped with disc brakes at all four wheels.

A vacuum power assist helps reduce the effort needed on the brake pedal.

Philippines and Laotian models

Malaysian models with 15 inch wheel

Your vehicle is equipped with disc brakes at the front, and drum brakes in the rear wheels.

A vacuum power assist helps to reduce the effort needed on the brake pedal.

Thai models

Your vehicle is equipped with disc brakes at the front, and drum brakes in the rear wheels.

All models

The brake assist system increases the stopping force when you depress the brake pedal hard in an emergency situation. The anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps you retain steering control when braking very hard.

➤ **Brake Assist System** P. 315

➤ **Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)** P. 314

Foot Brake

Check the brakes after driving through deep water, or if there is a buildup of road surface water. If necessary, dry the brakes by lightly depressing the pedal several times.

If you hear a continuous metallic friction sound when applying the brakes, the brake pads need to be replaced. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Constantly using the brake pedal while going down a long hill builds up heat, which reduces the brake effectiveness. Apply engine braking by taking your foot off the accelerator pedal and downshifting to a lower gear/speed position. With manual transmission use a lower gear for greater engine braking.

Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving, as it will lightly apply the brakes and cause them to lose effectiveness over time and reduce pad life. It will also confuse drivers behind you.

Thai models

Whenever the brakes are activated by CMBS or another system that automatically controls braking, the brake pedal is depressed and released in accordance with braking function.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

■ ABS

Helps to prevent the wheels from locking up, and helps you to retain steering control by pumping the brakes rapidly, much faster than you can.

The electronic brake distribution (EBD) system, which is part of the ABS, also balances the front-to-rear braking distribution according to vehicle loading.

You should never pump the brake pedal. Let the ABS work for you by always keeping firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. This is sometimes referred to as "stomp and steer."

■ ABS operation

The brake pedal may pulsate slightly when the ABS is working. Depress the brake pedal and keep holding the pedal firmly down. On dry pavement, you will need to press on the brake pedal very hard before the ABS activates. However, you may feel the ABS activate immediately if you are trying to stop on snow or ice.

ABS may activate when you depress the brake pedal when driving on:

- Wet or snow covered roads.
- Roads paved with stone.
- Roads with uneven surfaces, such as potholes, cracks, manholes, etc.

When the vehicle speed goes under 10 km/h, the ABS stops.

►► Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

NOTICE

The ABS may not function correctly if you use a tyre of the incorrect size or type.

If the **ABS** indicator comes on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While normal braking will not be affected, there is a possibility that the ABS will not be operating. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

The ABS is not designed for the purpose of reducing the time or distance it takes for a vehicle to stop: It is designed to limit brake lockup which can lead to skidding and loss of steering control.

In the following cases, your vehicle may need more distance to stop than a vehicle without the ABS:

- You are driving on rough or uneven road surfaces, such as gravel or snow.
- The tyres are equipped with tyre chains*.

The following may be observed with the ABS system:

- Motor sounds coming from the engine compartment when the brakes are applied, or when system checks are being performed after the engine has been started and while the vehicle accelerates.
- Brake pedal and/or the vehicle body vibration when ABS activates.

These vibrations and sounds are normal to ABS systems and are no cause for concern.

Brake Assist System

Is designed to assist the driver by generating greater braking force when you depress the brake pedal hard during emergency braking.

■ Brake assist system operation

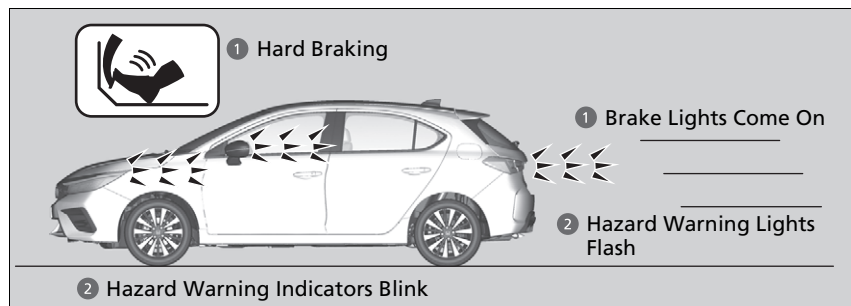
Press the brake pedal firmly for more powerful braking.

When brake assist operates, the pedal may wiggle slightly and an operating noise may be heard. This is normal. Keep holding the brake pedal firmly down.

Emergency Stop Signal

Activates when you brake hard while driving at 60 km/h or above to alert drivers behind you about sudden braking by rapidly flashing hazard warning lights. This may help to alert drivers behind you to take appropriate means to avoid a possible collision with your vehicle.

■ When the system activates:



The hazard warning lights stop flashing when:

- You release the brake pedal.
- The ABS is deactivated.
- Your vehicle's decelerating speed becomes moderate.
- You press the hazard warning button.

» Emergency Stop Signal

The emergency stop signal is not a system that can prevent a possible rear-end collision caused by your hard braking. It flashes the hazard warning lights at the time you are braking hard. It is always recommended to avoid hard braking unless it is absolutely necessary.

The emergency stop signal does not activate with the hazard warning button pressed in.

If the ABS stops working for a certain period during braking, the emergency stop signal may not activate at all.

When Stopped

1. Depress the brake pedal firmly.
2. Apply the parking brake.

Continuously variable transmission models

3. Change the shift position to **P**.
4. Turn off the engine.

Manual transmission models

3. Move the shift lever to **N**.
4. Turn off the engine and move the shift lever to **R** or **1**.

Always set the parking brake, especially if you are parked on an incline.

» Parking Your Vehicle

Continuously variable transmission models

WARNING

The vehicle can roll away if left unattended without confirming that Park is engaged.

A vehicle that rolls away could cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal until you have confirmed that **P** is shown on the shift position indicator.

Do not park your vehicle near flammable objects, such as dry grass, oil, or timber. Heat from the exhaust can cause a fire.

Continuously variable transmission models

NOTICE

The following can damage the transmission:

- Depressing the accelerator and brake pedals simultaneously.
- Holding the vehicle in place when facing uphill by depressing the accelerator pedal.
- Change the shift position to **P** before the vehicle stops completely.

►► Parking Your Vehicle

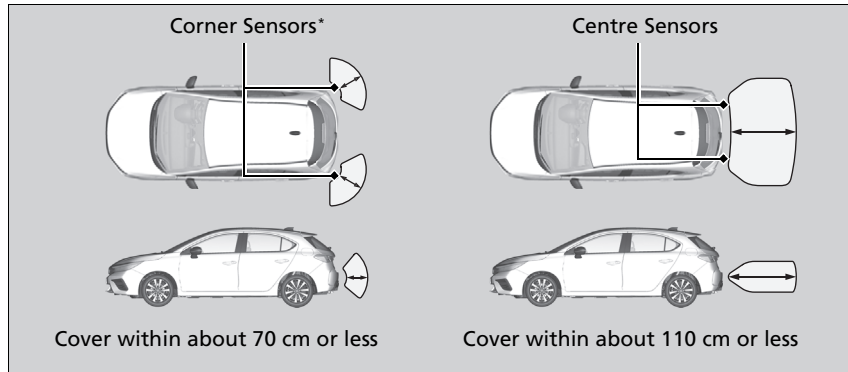
All models

In extremely cold temperatures, the parking brake may freeze up if applied. If such temperatures are expected, do not apply the parking brake. If parking on a slope, either turn the front wheels so they will contact the curb if the vehicle rolls down the slope or block the wheels to keep the vehicle from moving. If you do not take either precaution, the vehicle may roll unexpectedly, leading to a crash.

Parking Sensor System*

The rear corner* and centre sensors monitor obstacles behind your vehicle, and the beeper and driver information interface lets you know the approximate distance between your vehicle and the obstacle.

■ The sensor location and range



Models without parking sensor system button

The system activates when the transmission is in **R**, and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h.

⚠ Parking Sensor System*

Even when the system is on, always confirm if there is no obstacle near your vehicle before parking.

The system may not work properly when:

- The sensors are covered with snow, ice, mud, or dirt.
- The vehicle has been out in hot or cold weather.
- There is something nearby that emits ultrasonic waves or high frequency sounds.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).

The system may not detect these obstacles:

- Thin or low objects.
- Sonic-absorptive materials, such as snow, cotton, or sponge.
- Objects directly under the bumper.

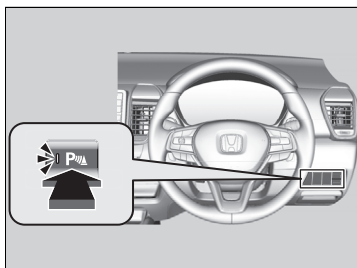
The system may falsely detect obstacles in the following situations:

- The vehicle is on uneven surface, such as grass, bumps, or a hill.
- When close to other vehicles with sonar sensors or other objects that emit ultrasonic waves.
- There is splashing water near the sensors due to heavy rains, etc.

* Not available on all models

Models with parking sensor system button

■ Parking Sensor System On and Off



With the power mode in ON, press the parking sensor system button to turn on or off the system. The indicator in the button comes on when the system is on.

The rear centre and corner sensors start to detect an obstacle when the shift lever is in **R**, and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h.

►► Parking Sensor System *

Do not put any accessories on or around the sensors.

Models with parking sensor system button


► If you put any accessories (such as bicycle rack) on or around the rear sensors, the system may activate if it detects these accessories as an obstacle. In this case, turn off the rear sensor.

➡ **Turning off All Rear Sensors** P. 322

►► Parking Sensor System On and Off

When you set the power mode to ON, the system will be in the previously selected condition.

■ When the Distance Between Your Vehicle and Obstacles Becomes Shorter

Interval between beeps	Distance between the Bumper and Obstacle		Indicator	Driver information interface
	Corner Sensors*	Centre Sensors		
Moderate	—	About 60-110 cm	Blinks in Yellow* ¹	 <p>Indicators light up where the sensor detects an obstacle</p>
Short	About 45-70 cm	About 45-60 cm	Blinks in Amber	
Very short	About 35-45 cm	About 35-45 cm		
Continuous	About 35 cm or less	About 35 cm or less	Blinks in Red	

*1: At this stage, only the centre sensors detect obstacles.

Models with parking sensor system button

■ Turning off All Rear Sensors

To deactivate the rear sensors, please take the following steps:

1. Make sure that the parking sensor system is not activated.
 - The indicator in the button turns off.
2. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
3. Press and hold the parking sensor system button, and set the power mode to ON.
4. Keep pressing the button for 10 seconds. Release the button when the indicator in the button flashes.
 - The beeper sounds once.
5. While the indicator is flashing, press the button again. The indicator in the button turns off.
 - The beeper sounds twice. The rear sensors are now turned off. They will remain turned off until manually turned back on again. To turn the rear sensors on again, follow the above procedure. The beeper sounds three times when the rear sensors come back on.

» Turning off All Rear Sensors

When you set the shift position to **R**, the indicator in the parking sensor system button blinks as a reminder that the rear sensors have been turned off.

Fuel Information

■ Fuel recommendation

Thai models

Unleaded premium petrol/gasohol up to E20 (80% petrol and 20% ethanol), research octane number 95 or higher

Use of lower octane petrol can cause occasional metallic knocking noise in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance.

Use of petrol with a research octane less than 91 can lead to engine damage.

Indonesian models

Unleaded petrol, research octane number 90 or higher

Use of lower octane petrol can cause a persistent, heavy metallic knocking noise that can lead to engine damage.

Except Thai and Indonesian models

Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher

Use of lower octane petrol can cause a persistent, heavy metallic knocking noise that can lead to engine damage.

■ Fuel tank capacity: 40 L

» Fuel Information

NOTICE

Use of petrol that contains lead presents the following risks:

- Damage to the exhaust system including the catalytic converter
- Damage to the engine and fuel system
- Detrimental effects on the engine and other systems

Thai models

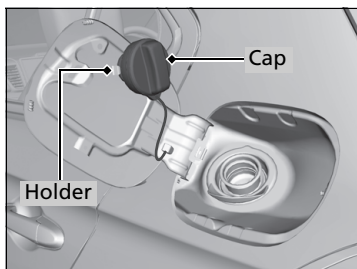
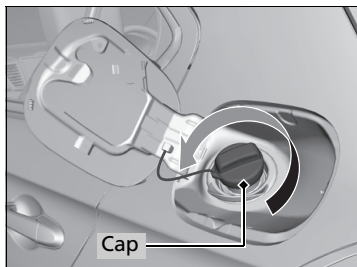
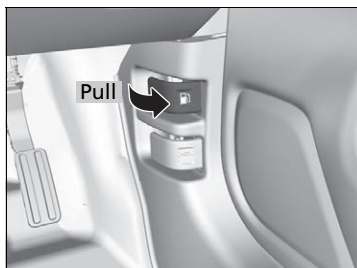
■ **Engine cleaner**

Fuel quality varies by region. Add genuine injector cleaner agent according to the time and distance instructions in the maintenance schedule.

Please use a genuine Honda injector cleaner agent. If not available, please use a PEA (polyetheramine) based cleaning agent instead.

Regular use of injector cleaner may be needed in countries or regions without a maintenance schedule. Consult your dealer for more information.

How to Refuel



1. Stop your vehicle with the service station pump on the left side of the vehicle in the rear.
2. Turn off the engine.
3. Pull on the fuel fill door release handle under the driver's side lower outside corner of the dashboard.
▶ The fuel fill door opens.
4. Remove the fuel fill cap slowly. If you hear a release of air, wait until this stops, then turn the knob slowly to open the fuel fill cap.
5. Place the fuel fill cap in the holder.
6. Insert the fuel filler nozzle fully.
▶ When the tank is full, the filler nozzle will click off automatically. This leaves space in the fuel tank in case the fuel expands with a change in the temperature.
7. After filling, replace the fuel fill cap, tightening it until you hear it click at least once.
▶ Shut the fuel fill door by hand.

How to Refuel

⚠ WARNING

Petrol is highly flammable and explosive. You can be burned or seriously injured when handling fuel.

- Stop the engine, and keep heat, sparks, and flames away.
- Handle fuel only outdoors.
- Wipe up spills immediately.

⚠ CAUTION

The filler nozzle automatically stops to leave space in the fuel tank so that fuel does not overflow as a result of changes in air temperature.

Do not continue to add fuel after the filler nozzle has automatically stopped. Additional fuel can exceed the full tank capacity and cause fuel to spill.

Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO₂ Emissions

Achieving fuel economy and reducing CO₂ emissions is dependent on several factors, including driving conditions, load weight, idling time, driving habits, and vehicle condition. Depending on these and other factors, you may not achieve the rated fuel economy of this vehicle.

Maintenance and Fuel Economy

You can optimize your fuel economy with proper maintenance of your vehicle. Follow the maintenance schedule and, if necessary, consult your warranty booklet.

📖 Maintenance Schedule P. 338

- Use engine oil with the viscosity recommended.

📖 Recommended Engine Oil P. 348

- Maintain the specified tyre pressure.
- Do not load the vehicle with excess luggage.
- Keep your vehicle clean. A buildup of snow or mud on your vehicle's underside adds weight and increases wind resistance.

📖 Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO₂ Emissions

Direct calculation is the recommended method to determine actual fuel consumed while driving.

100	×	Litres of fuel	÷	Kilometres driven	=	L per 100 km
Kilometres driven	÷	Litres of fuel	=	Kilometres per Litre		

Handling Precautions

The turbocharger is a high-precision device to obtain greater horsepower by delivering a large volume of compressed air into the engine using a turbine driven by the engine's exhaust gas pressure.



- When the engine is cold just after starting, avoid revving the engine or sudden acceleration.
- Always replace the engine oil and engine oil filter according to the Oil Monitor System. The turbine rotates at very high speeds over 100,000 rpm and its temperature reaches over 700°C. It is lubricated and cooled by engine oil. If you fail to replace the engine oil and filter at the scheduled distance or interval, deteriorated engine oil may cause failure such as sticking and abnormal noise of the turbine bearing.

» Turbo Engine Vehicle*

The scheduled maintenance intervals for replacing the engine oil and filter is indicated on the driver information interface. Follow the information on replacement timing.

➤ **Oil Monitor System*** P. 333

➤ **Recommended Engine Oil** P. 348

The  **Engine temperature too hot. Do not drive. Allow engine to cool.** or  **Engine temperature near limit. Avoid strong acceleration and high speed.** message may appear on the driver information interface when you restart the engine after driving under high load conditions such as at high speed or in hilly terrain. This is normal. The message goes off after you idle or drive the vehicle for about one minute.

* Not available on all models

Maintenance

This chapter discusses basic maintenance.



Before Performing Maintenance

Inspection and Maintenance	330
Safety When Performing Maintenance	331
Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service	332

Oil Monitor System*	333
----------------------------------	-----

Maintenance Schedule	338
-----------------------------------	-----

Maintenance Under the Bonnet

Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet ...	345
Opening the Bonnet	347
Recommended Engine Oil	348
Oil Check	350

Adding Engine Oil	352
Engine Coolant	353
Transmission Fluid	357
Brake/Clutch* Fluid	358
Refilling Window Washer Fluid	360
Fuel Filter	360

Replacing Light Bulbs	361
------------------------------------	-----

Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades	373
--	-----

Checking and Maintaining Tyres	
Checking Tyres	377
Wear Indicators	379

Tyre Service Life	379
Tyre and Wheel Replacement	380
Tyre Rotation	381
Snow Traction Devices	382

Battery	384
----------------------	-----

Remote Transmitter Care	387
--------------------------------------	-----

Cooling System*/Climate Control System* Maintenance	389
--	-----

Cleaning	
Interior Care	391
Exterior Care	394

Accessories and Modifications	397
--	-----

* Not available on all models

Inspection and Maintenance

For your safety, perform all listed inspections and maintenance to keep your vehicle in good condition. If you become aware of any abnormality (noise, smell, insufficient brake fluid, oil residue on the ground, etc.), have your vehicle inspected by a dealer. Refer to the maintenance schedule in this owner's manual for detailed maintenance and inspection information.

➤ **Maintenance Schedule** P. 338

■ Types of Inspection and Maintenance

■ Routine inspections

Perform inspections before long distance trips, when washing the vehicle, or when refueling.

■ Periodic inspections

- Check the brake/clutch* fluid level monthly.
 - **Brake/Clutch* Fluid** P. 358
- Check the tyre pressure monthly. Examine the tread for wear and foreign objects.
 - **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 377
- Check the operation of the exterior lights monthly.
 - **Replacing Light Bulbs** P. 361
- Check the condition of the wiper blades at least every six months.
 - **Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades** P. 373

Safety When Performing Maintenance

Some of the most important safety precautions are given here. However, we cannot warn you of every conceivable hazard that can arise in performing maintenance. Only you can decide whether you should perform a given task.

Maintenance Safety

- To reduce the possibility of fire or explosion, keep cigarettes, sparks, and flames away from the battery and all fuel related parts.
- Never leave rags, towels, or other flammable objects under the bonnet.
► Heat from the surrounding parts can ignite them, causing a fire.
- To clean parts, use a commercially available degreaser or parts cleaner, not petrol.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when working with the battery or compressed air.
- Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide, which is poisonous and can kill you.
► Only operate the engine if there is sufficient ventilation.

⚠ Safety When Performing Maintenance

⚠ WARNING

Improperly maintaining this vehicle or failing to correct a problem before driving can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the inspection and maintenance recommendations and schedules in this owner's manual.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to properly follow maintenance instructions and precautions can cause you to be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the procedures and precautions in this owner's manual.

■ Vehicle Safety

- The vehicle must be in a stationary condition.
 - Make sure your vehicle is parked on level ground, the parking brake is set, and the engine is off.
- Make sure that the radiator fan is stopped before inspecting the engine compartment.
 - Depending on the vehicle condition, the radiator fan may operate even when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.
- Be aware that hot parts can burn you.
 - Make sure to let the engine and exhaust system cool thoroughly before touching vehicle parts.
- Be aware that moving parts can injure you.
 - Do not start the engine unless instructed, and keep your hands and limbs away from moving parts.

Models with Auto Idle Stop

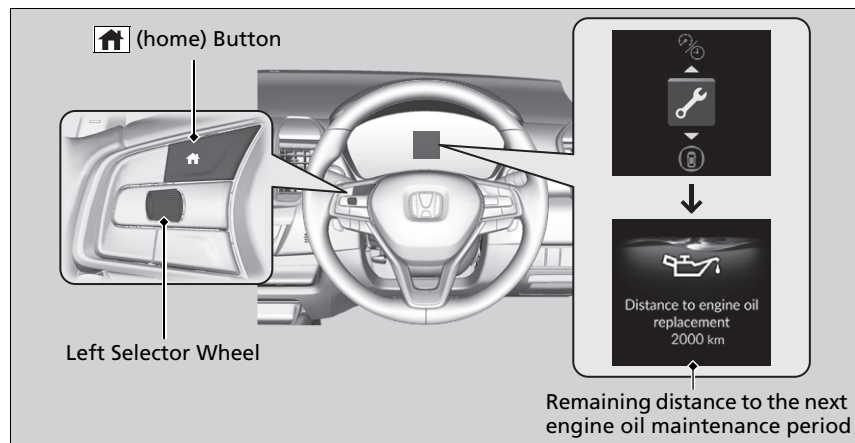
- Do not open the bonnet while the Auto Idle Stop function is activated.



Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service


The use of Honda Genuine Parts and fluids is recommended when maintaining and servicing your vehicle. Honda Genuine Parts are manufactured according to the same high quality standards used in Honda vehicles.

The warning message notifies you when to change the engine oil, or when to bring your vehicle to a dealer for indicated maintenance services.

Displaying the Oil Monitor System Information



1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Press the  (home) button.
3. Roll the left selector wheel until  is displayed.
4. Press the left selector wheel to go to the oil monitor system information screen.
The engine oil life appears on the driver information interface.

The system message indicator () stays on in the instrument panel after the maintenance period reached. Have the indicated maintenance done by a dealer immediately.

* Not available on all models

Continued

▣ Displaying the Oil Monitor System Information





Based on the engine operating and engine oil conditions, the remaining distance to the next maintenance period is calculated and displayed.









By driving conditions, actual travel distance might be shorter than the displayed distance.





Regardless of what the oil monitor system information indicates, perform maintenance regularly. Please refer to the maintenance schedule for more details.

▣ **Maintenance Schedule** P. 338

Oil Monitor System Information on the Driver Information Interface

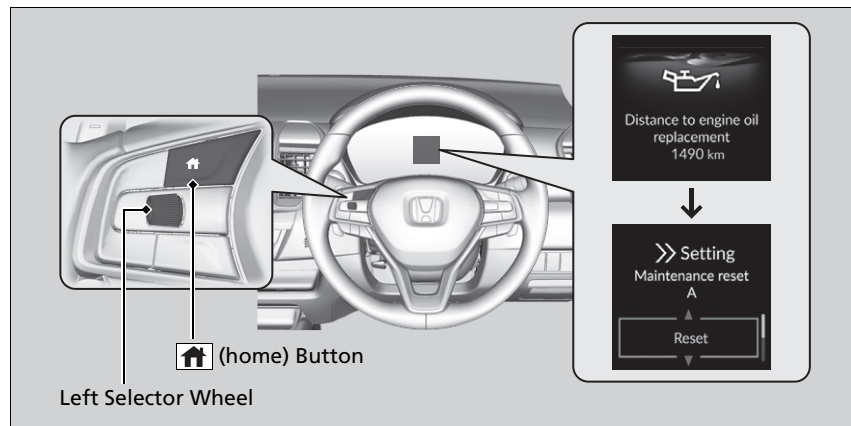
Warning Message	Oil Life Display	Information
Normal	 Distance to engine oil replacement ----- km	When you reset the remaining distance after an oil change, a series of dots will appear in the oil life display. These dots will remain displayed until the system determines, based on the driving conditions, the remaining distance until the next oil change, or the next oil and filter change.
	 Distance to engine oil and filter replacement ----- km	
	 Distance to engine oil replacement 2000 km	When you select the oil monitor system information screen, the remaining engine oil life, or the remaining engine oil and oil filter life is displayed.
	 Distance to engine oil and filter replacement 2000 km	

Warning Message	Oil Life Display	Information
<p>Replacement Due Soon</p> <div>  <p>Engine oil replacement due soon</p> </div> <div>  <p>Engine oil and filter replacement due soon</p> </div>	<div>  <p>Distance to engine oil replacement 1490 km</p> </div> <div>  <p>Distance to engine oil and filter replacement 1490 km</p> </div>	<p>The engine oil, or the engine oil and oil filter are approaching the end of their life.</p>
<p>Replacement Due Now</p> <div>  <p>Engine oil replacement due now</p> </div> <div>  <p>Engine oil and filter replacement due now</p> </div>	<div>  <p>Distance to engine oil replacement 490 km</p> </div> <div>  <p>Distance to engine oil and filter replacement 490 km</p> </div>	<p>The engine oil, or the engine oil and oil filter have almost reached the end of their service life, and the maintenance service item(s) should be inspected and serviced as soon as possible.</p>

Warning Message	Oil Life Display	Information
<p>Replacement Past Due</p> <div>  <p>Engine oil replacement overdue</p> </div> <div>  <p>Engine oil and filter replacement overdue</p> </div>	<div>  <p>Distance to engine oil replacement - 10 km</p> </div> <div>  <p>Distance to engine oil and filter replacement - 10 km</p> </div>	<p>The engine oil, or the engine oil and oil filter have passed their service life. The maintenance service item(s) must be inspected and serviced immediately.</p>

■ Resetting the Display

Reset the engine oil monitor system information if you have performed the maintenance service.



1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Press the (home) button.
3. Roll the left selector wheel until **Clock & vehicle settings** is displayed.
4. Roll the left selector wheel until **Maintenance reset** is displayed.
5. Roll the left selector wheel to select **Reset** (You can also select **Cancel** to end the process).
6. Press the left selector wheel to reset the selected item.
 - ▶ When the oil monitor system information display is reset, the engine oil life is reset to ----- km.

▶▶ Resetting the Display

NOTICE

Failure to reset the engine oil life after a maintenance service results in the system showing incorrect maintenance intervals, which can lead to serious mechanical problems.

The dealer will reset the engine oil life display after completing the required maintenance service. If someone other than a dealer performs maintenance service, reset the engine oil life display yourself.

Maintenance Schedule

The maintenance schedule outlines the minimum required maintenance that you should perform to ensure the troublefree operation of your vehicle. Due to regional and climatic differences, some additional servicing may be required. Please consult your warranty booklet for a more detailed description.

Maintenance work should be performed by properly trained and equipped technicians. Your authorised dealer meets all of these requirements.

Except Thai models

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km x 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace engine oil	Normal	Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
	Severe	Every 5,000 km or 6 months									
Replace engine oil filter	Normal	Every 20,000 km or 2 years									
	Severe	Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
Replace air cleaner element		Every 30,000 km									
Inspect valve clearance* ¹		Every 120,000 km									

*1: Sensory Method: Adjust the valves during service 120,000 km if they are noisy.

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km x 1,000		20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	months		12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace spark plugs			Every 100,000 km									
Inspect drive belt				•		•		•		•		•
Replace engine coolant			At 200,000 km or 10 years, thereafter every 100,000 km or 5 years									
Replace transmission fluid	MT	Normal						•				
		Severe			•			•			•	
	CVT			•		•		•		•		•
Replace dust and pollen filter			•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Inspect front and rear brakes			Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
Replace fuel filter* ¹	Normal		Every 120,000 km* ² Every 140,000 km* ³									
	Severe		Every 60,000 km* ² Every 90,000 km* ³									
Replace brake fluid			Every 3 years									
Check parking brake adjustment			•	•		•		•		•		•
Rotate tyres (Check tyre inflation and condition at least once per month)			Every 10,000 km									

*1: It is recommended that you replace the fuel filter if the fuel you are using is suspected to be contaminated with dust, etc. because the filter may be clogged sooner.

*2: Indonesian models

*3: Except Indonesian models

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km x 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120

Visually inspect the following items:

Tie rod ends, steering gear box, and boots	Every 10,000 km or 1 year										
Suspension components											
Driveshaft boots											
Brake hoses and lines (including ABS/SA)											
All fluid levels and condition of fluid	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Exhaust system											
Fuel lines and connections											

If you drive your vehicle under severe conditions, you must have the following items served to the maintenance schedule indicated as Severe.

Items	Condition
Engine oil and oil filter	A, B, C, D and E
Transmission fluid	B, D

⌘ Maintenance Schedule

The condition is considered as severe when you drive:

- A. less than 8 km, or less than 16 km in freezing temperatures per trip.
- B. In extremely hot temperature above 35°C.
- C. With extensive idling or long periods of stop-and-go.
- D. With a loaded roof rack, or in mountains.
- E. On muddy, dusty or de-iced roads.

Continued

Thai models

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km x 1,000 months	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
		12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace engine oil		When indicator comes on or 1 year									
Replace engine oil filter		When indicator comes on or 2 years									
Replace air cleaner element		Every 30,000 km									
Inspect valve clearance* ¹		Every 120,000 km									
Replace spark plugs		Every 100,000 km									
Replace timing belt						•					•
Inspect drive belt			•		•		•		•		•
Replace engine coolant		At 200,000 km or 10 years, thereafter every 100,000 km or 5 years									
Replace transmission fluid			•		•		•		•		•
Inspect front and rear brakes		Every 10,000 km or 1 year									

*1: Sensory Method: Adjust the valves during service 120,000 km if they are noisy.

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km x 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace brake fluid		Every 3 years									
Replace fuel filter	Normal	Every 140,000 km									
	Severe	Every 90,000 km* ¹									
Check parking brake adjustment		•	•		•		•		•		•
Replace dust and pollen filter		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Rotate tyres (Check tyre inflation and condition at least once per month)		Every 10,000 km									
Visually inspect the following items:											
Tie rod ends, steering gear box, and boots		Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
Suspension components											
Driveshaft boots											
Brake hoses and lines (including ABS/VSA)											
All fluid levels and condition of fluid		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Exhaust system											
Fuel lines and connections											

*1: It is recommended that you replace the fuel filter if the fuel you are using is suspected to be contaminated with dust, etc. because the filter may be clogged sooner.

Maintenance Record

Have your servicing dealer record all required maintenance below. Keep receipts for all work done on your vehicle.

	Km or Month	Date	Sign or Stamp
	20,000 km (or 12 Mo.)		
	40,000 km (or 24 Mo.)		
	60,000 km (or 36 Mo.)		
	80,000 km (or 48 Mo.)		
	100,000 km (or 60 Mo.)		
	120,000 km (or 72 Mo.)		
	140,000 km (or 84 Mo.)		
	160,000 km (or 96 Mo.)		
	180,000 km (or 108 Mo.)		
	200,000 km (or 120 Mo.)		

Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet

Except Thai models

Right-hand Drive Type

Brake/Clutch* Fluid
(Black Cap)

Engine Oil Dipstick
(Orange)

Engine Oil Fill Cap

Washer Fluid
(Blue Cap)

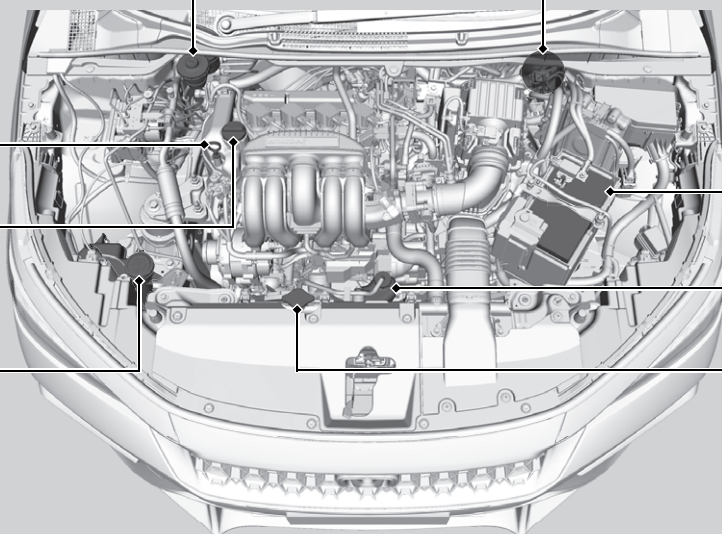
Left-hand Drive Type

Brake Fluid
(Black Cap)

Battery

Engine Coolant
Reserve Tank

Radiator Cap



* Not available on all models

Thai models

Brake Fluid
(Black Cap)

Reserve Tank

Reserve Tank Cap

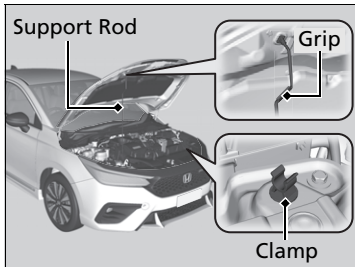
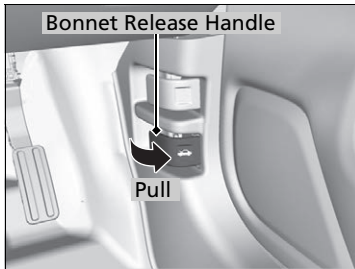
Washer Fluid
(Blue Cap)

Battery

Engine Oil Fill Cap

Engine Oil Dipstick
(Orange)

Opening the Bonnet



1. Park the vehicle on a level surface, and set the parking brake.
2. Pull the bonnet release handle under the driver's side lower outside corner of the dashboard.
► The bonnet will pop up slightly.
3. Pull up the bonnet latch lever (located under the front edge of the bonnet to the centre) and raise the bonnet. Once you have raised the bonnet slightly, you can release the lever.

4. Remove the support rod from the clamp using the grip. Mount the support rod in the bonnet.

When closing, remove the support rod and stow it in the clamp, then gently lower the bonnet. Remove your hand at a height of approximately 30 cm and let the bonnet close.

Opening the Bonnet

NOTICE

Do not open the bonnet when the wiper arms are raised. The bonnet will strike the wipers, resulting in possible damage to the bonnet and/or the wipers.

When closing the bonnet, check that the bonnet is securely latched.

If the bonnet latch lever moves stiffly, or if you can open the bonnet without lifting the lever, the latch mechanism should be cleaned and lubricated.

Models with Auto Idle Stop

Do not open the bonnet while the Auto Idle Stop function is activated.

Recommended Engine Oil

Use a genuine engine oil or another commercial engine oil of suitable type and viscosity (for the ambient temperature) as shown in the image that follows.

Oil is a major contributor to your engine’s performance and longevity. If you drive the vehicle with insufficient or deteriorated oil, the engine may fail or be damaged.

Except Thai models

Genuine Engine Oil	Commercial Engine Oil
<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Honda Engine OIL #1.0[*]• Honda Green OIL• Honda Genuine Motor Oil	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• API service SN or higher grade fuel-efficient oil• API Certification Mark “Starburst” or “Shield”• ACEA A5/B5

*1:Formulated to improve fuel economy.

Recommended Engine Oil

Engine Oil Additives

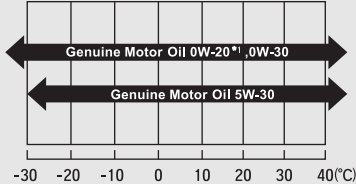
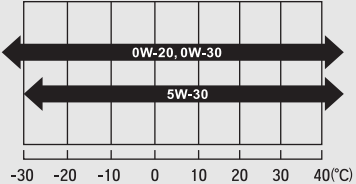
Your vehicle does not require oil additives. In fact, they may adversely affect the engine performance and durability.

The following seal indicates the oil is energy conserving and that it meets the American Petroleum Institute’s latest requirements.

Except Thai models



Thai models

Genuine Engine Oil	Commercial Engine Oil
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Honda Genuine Motor Oil 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> API service SN or higher grade fuel-efficient oil API Certification Mark "Starburst" ACEA A5/B5
 <p>Ambient Temperature</p>	 <p>Ambient Temperature</p>

*1: Formulated to improve fuel economy.

►► Recommended Engine Oil

Thai models

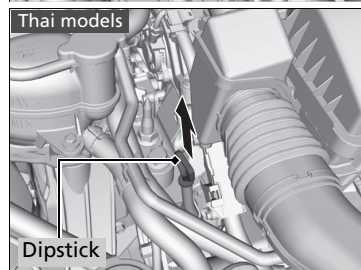
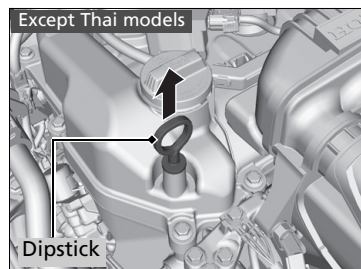


Oil Check

We recommend that you check the engine oil level every time you refuel.

Park the vehicle on level ground.

Wait approximately three minutes after turning the engine off before you check the oil.

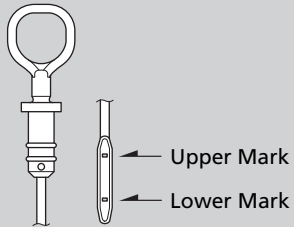


1. Remove the dipstick (orange).
2. Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth or paper towel.
3. Insert the dipstick back all the way into its hole.

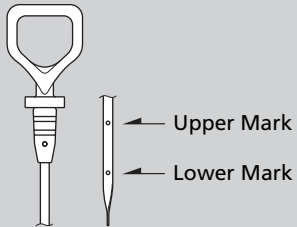
Oil Check

If the oil level is near or below the lower mark, slowly add oil, being careful not to overfill.

Except Thai models

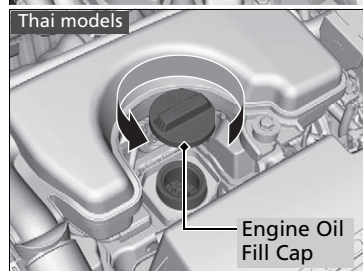
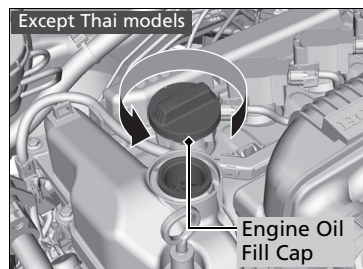


Thai models



4. Remove the dipstick again, and check the level. It should be between the upper and lower marks. Add oil if necessary.

Adding Engine Oil



1. Unscrew and remove the engine oil fill cap.
2. Add oil slowly.
3. Reinstall the engine oil fill cap, and tighten it securely.
4. Wait for three minutes and recheck the engine oil dipstick.

►► Adding Engine Oil

NOTICE

Do not fill the engine oil above the upper mark. Overfilling the engine oil may result in leaks and engine damage.

If any oil spills, wipe it away immediately. Spilled oil may damage the engine compartment components.

Except Thai models

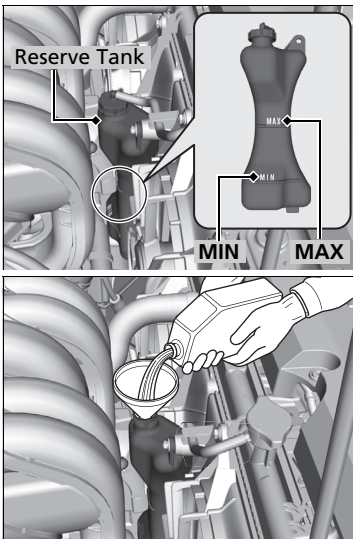
Engine Coolant

Specified coolant: Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2

This coolant is premixed with 50% antifreeze and 50% water. Do not add any straight antifreeze or water.

We recommend you check the engine coolant level every time you refuel. Check the reserve tank first. If it is completely empty, also check the coolant level in the radiator. Add the engine coolant accordingly.

Reserve Tank



1. Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.
2. Check the amount of coolant in the reserve tank.
 - If the coolant level is below the **MIN** mark, add the specified coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
3. Inspect the cooling system for leaks.

Engine Coolant

⚠ WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

NOTICE

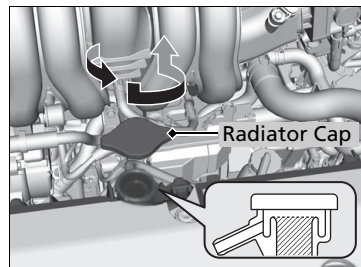
If temperatures consistently below -30°C are expected, the coolant mixture should be changed to a higher concentration. Consult your Honda dealer for details about a suitable coolant mixture.

If Honda antifreeze/coolant is not available, you may use another major brand of non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Check that it is a high quality coolant recommended for aluminium engines. Continued use of any non-Honda coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Honda antifreeze/coolant as soon as possible.

Do not add rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or with the engine components.

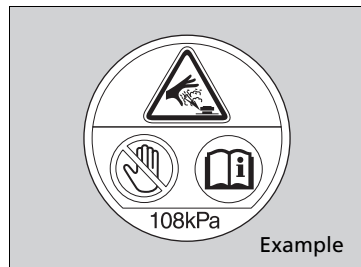
Continued

■ Radiator



1. **Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.**
2. Turn the radiator cap 1/8th turn anticlockwise and relieve any pressure in the cooling system.
3. Push down and turn the radiator cap anticlockwise to remove it.
4. The coolant level should be up to the base of the filler neck. Add coolant if it is low.
5. Put the radiator cap back on, and tighten it fully.

■ Radiator Cap *



- Never open when hot.
- Hot coolant will scald you.
- Relief pressure valve begins to open at 108 kPa.

►► Radiator

NOTICE

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately; they can damage components in the engine compartment.

Thai models

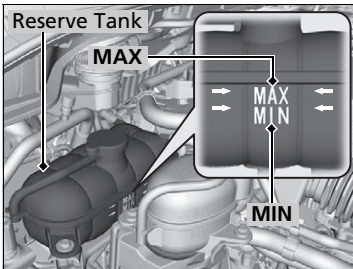
Engine Coolant

Specified coolant: Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2

This coolant is premixed with 50% antifreeze and 50% water. Do not add any straight antifreeze or water.

We recommend you check the engine coolant level every time you refuel. Check the reserve tank. Add the engine coolant accordingly.

Checking the Coolant



1. Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.
2. Check the amount of coolant in the reserve tank.
 - If the coolant level is below the **MIN** mark, add the specified coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
3. Inspect the cooling system for leaks.

Engine Coolant

⚠ WARNING

Removing the reserve tank cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the reserve tank cap.

NOTICE

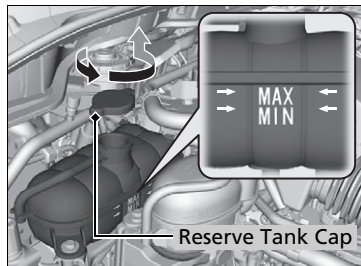
If temperatures consistently below -30°C are expected, the coolant mixture should be changed to a higher concentration. Consult your Honda dealer for details about a suitable coolant mixture.

If Honda antifreeze/coolant is not available, you may use another major brand of non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Check that it is a high quality coolant recommended for aluminium engines. Continued use of any non-Honda coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Honda antifreeze/coolant as soon as possible.

Do not add rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or with the engine components.

Continued

■ Adding the Coolant



1. **Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.**
2. Turn the reserve tank cap 1/8th turn anticlockwise and relieve any pressure in the cooling system.
3. Turn the reserve tank cap anticlockwise to remove it.
4. Pour coolant into the reserve tank until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
5. Put the reserve tank cap back on, and tighten it fully.

►► Adding the Coolant

NOTICE

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately; they can damage components in the engine compartment.

Transmission Fluid

Manual transmission models

Manual Transmission Fluid

Specified fluid: Honda MTF

Have a dealer check the fluid level and replace if necessary.
Follow your vehicle's maintenance service timing of when to change manual transmission fluid.

🔧 **Maintenance Schedule** P. 338

Do not attempt to check or change the manual transmission fluid by yourself.

Continuously variable transmission models

Continuously Variable Transmission (CVT) Fluid

Specified fluid: Honda HCF-2

Have a dealer check the fluid level and replace if necessary.
Follow your vehicle's maintenance service timing of when to change continuously variable transmission fluid.

🔧 **Maintenance Schedule** P. 338

Do not attempt to check or change the continuously variable transmission fluid by yourself.

Manual Transmission Fluid

NOTICE

If Honda MTF is not available, you may use the API certificated SAE 0W-20 or 5W-20 viscosity motor oil as a temporary measure.

Replace with MTF as soon as possible. Motor oil does not contain the proper additives for the transmission and continued use can cause decreased shifting performance and lead to transmission damage.

Continuously Variable Transmission (CVT) Fluid

NOTICE

Do not mix Honda HCF-2 with other transmission fluids.

Using a transmission fluid other than Honda HCF-2 may adversely affect the operation and durability of your vehicle's transmission, and damage the transmission.

Any damage caused by using a transmission fluid that is not equivalent to Honda HCF-2 is not covered by Honda's new vehicle limited warranty.

Brake/Clutch * Fluid

Specified fluid: Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4

» Brake/Clutch * Fluid

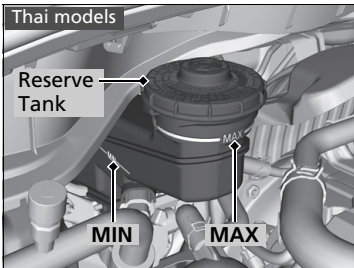
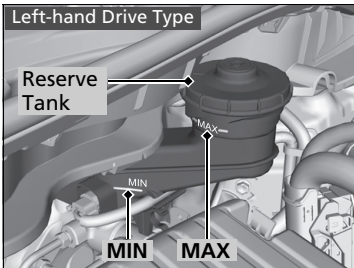
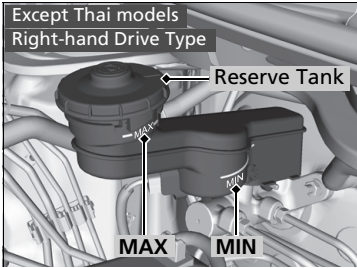
NOTICE

Brake fluid marked DOT 5 is not compatible with your vehicle's braking system and can cause extensive damage.

We recommend using a genuine product.

If the brake fluid level is at or below the **MIN** mark, have a dealer inspect the vehicle for leaks or worn brake pads as soon as possible.

■ Checking the Brake Fluid



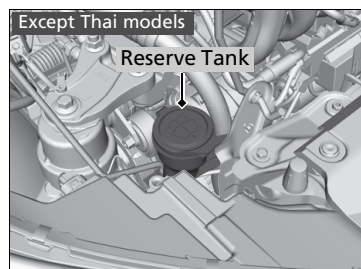
The fluid level should be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the side of the reserve tank.

Manual transmission models

The brake fluid reserve tank is also used for your vehicle's clutch fluid. As long as you keep the brake fluid level as instructed above, there is no need for checking the clutch fluid level.

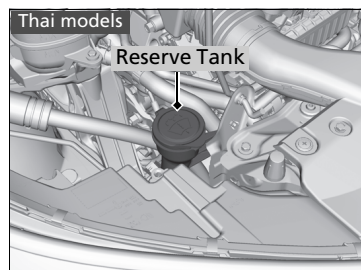
Refilling Window Washer Fluid

Check the amount of window washer fluid by looking at the reservoir.



If the level is low, fill the washer reservoir.

Pour the washer fluid carefully. Do not overflow the reservoir.



Fuel Filter

Replace fuel filter according to the time and distance recommendations in the maintenance schedule.

Have a qualified technician change the fuel filter. Fuel in the system can spray out and create a hazard if all fuel line connections are not handled correctly.

► Refilling Window Washer Fluid

NOTICE

Do not use engine antifreeze or a vinegar/water solution in the windscreen washer reservoir. Antifreeze can damage your vehicle's paint. A vinegar/water solution can damage the windscreen washer pump. Use only commercially available windscreen washer fluid. Avoid prolonged use of hard water to prevent lime scale build up.

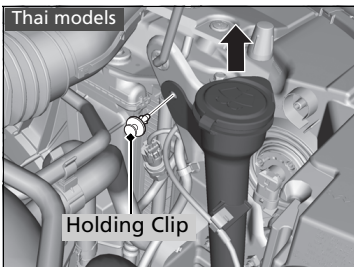
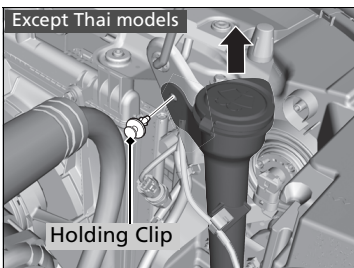
Headlight Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

High beam headlight:	60 W (HB3 for halogen bulb type)* LED type*
Low beam headlight:	55 W (H7 for halogen bulb type)* LED type*

High Beam Headlights

Models with halogen headlights



Right side

1. Remove the holding clip using a flat-tip screwdriver, then remove the upper part of the window washer reserve tank.

Headlight Bulbs

NOTICE

Halogen bulbs get very hot when lit. Oil, perspiration, or a scratch on the glass can cause the bulb to overheat and shatter.

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the luggage area, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

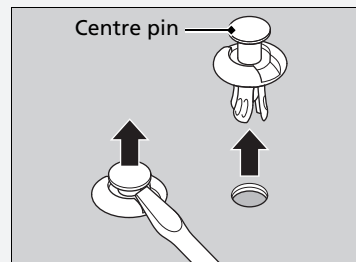
When replacing a halogen bulb, handle it by its base, and protect the glass from contact with your skin or hard objects. If you touch the glass, clean it with denatured alcohol and a clean cloth.

Models with LED headlights

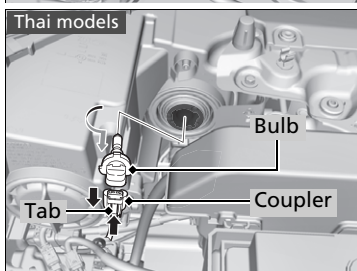
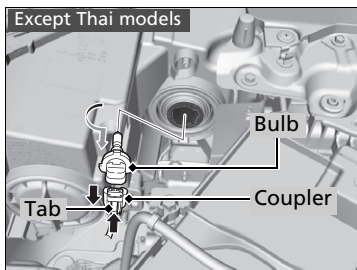
High beam and low beam headlights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Holding clip

Insert a flat-tip screwdriver, lift and remove the centre pin to remove the clip.



* Not available on all models

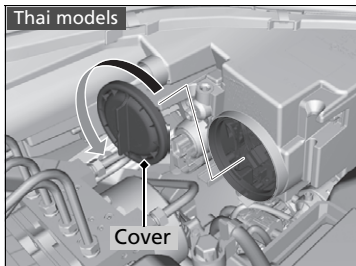
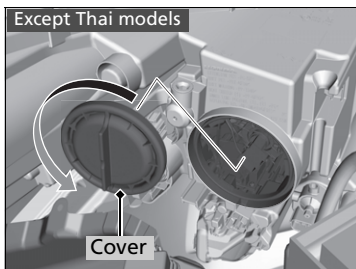


Both sides

2. Push the tab to remove the coupler.
3. Rotate the old bulb anticlockwise to remove.
4. Insert a new bulb into the headlight assembly and turn it clockwise.
5. Insert the coupler into the connector of the bulb.

Low Beam Headlights

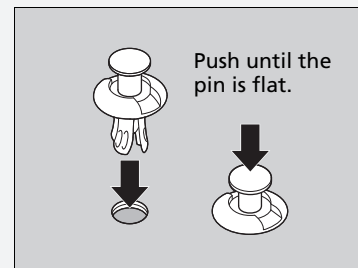
Models with halogen headlights



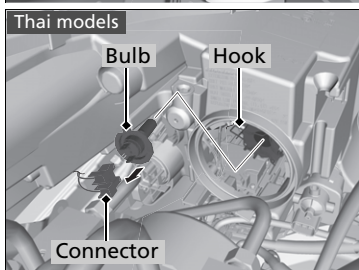
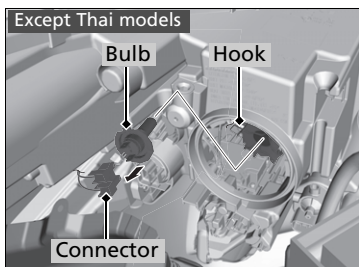
1. Rotate the cover anticlockwise to remove.

Headlight Bulbs

Insert the clip with the centre pin raised, and push until it is flat.



Continued

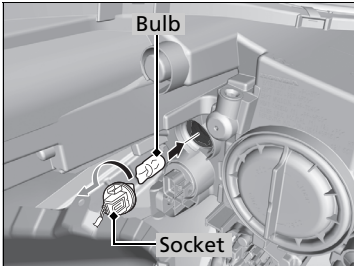


2. Unhook the hook, and pull out the connector.
3. Remove the old bulb and insert the new bulb.
4. Put the connector back into the bulb.

Front Turn Signal Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Front Turn Signal Light: 21 W (Amber)*
LED type*



1. Turn the socket anticlockwise and remove it.
2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

Position/Daytime Running Lights

Position/daytime running lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Front Turn Signal Light Bulbs

Models with LED front turn signal lights

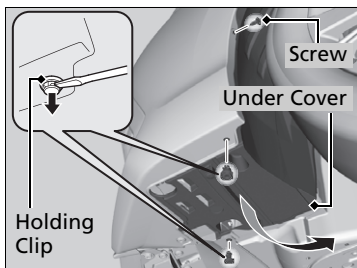
Front turn signal lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

* Not available on all models

Fog Light Bulbs*

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

**Fog Light: 35 W (H8 for halogen bulb type)*
LED type***



1. Remove the screw using a Phillips-head screwdriver and remove the holding clips using a flat-tip screwdriver.
2. Pull down the under cover.

► Fog Light Bulbs*

NOTICE

Halogen bulbs get very hot when lit. Oil, perspiration, or a scratch on the glass can cause the bulb to overheat and shatter.

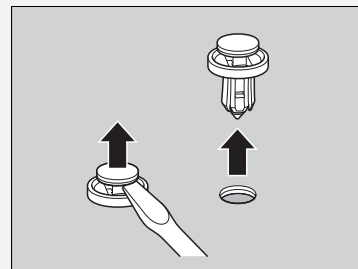
When replacing a halogen bulb, handle it by its plastic case, and protect the glass from contact with your skin or hard objects. If you touch the glass, clean it with denatured alcohol and a clean cloth.

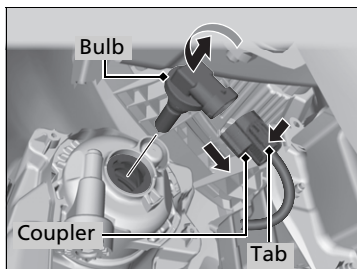
Models with LED fog lights

Fog lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Holding clip

Insert a flat-tip screwdriver, lift and remove the centre pin to remove the clip.





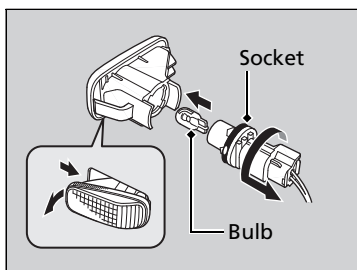
3. Push the tab to remove the coupler.
4. Rotate the old bulb to the left to remove.
5. Insert a new bulb into the fog light assembly and turn it to the right.
6. Insert the coupler into the connector of the bulb.

Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights

Fender type

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Side Turn Signal Light: 5 W (Amber)



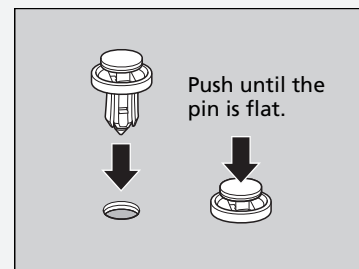
1. Push the front of the side turn signal assembly towards the rear of the vehicle until it pops out of the body.
2. Turn the socket anticlockwise and remove it.
3. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

Door mirror type

Door mirror side turn lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

❖ Fog Light Bulbs *

Insert the clip with the centre pin raised, and push until it is flat.

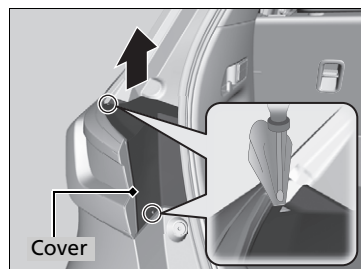


* Not available on all models

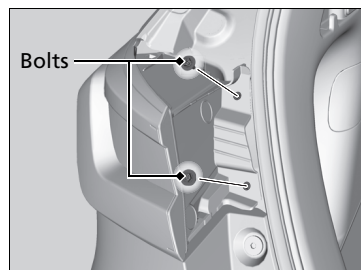
Brake, Taillight and Rear Turn Signal Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Brake Light:	LED Type
Taillight:	LED Type
Rear Turn Signal Light:	21W (Amber)



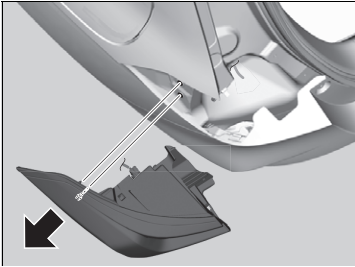
1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
 - Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



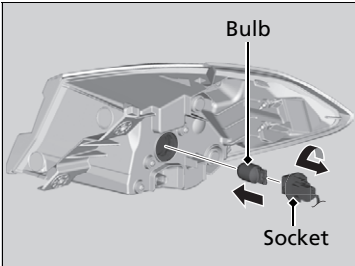
2. Use a Phillips-head screwdriver or socket to remove the bolts.

► Brake, Taillight and Rear Turn Signal Light Bulbs

Brake and taillights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.



3. Pull the light assembly out of the rear pillar.



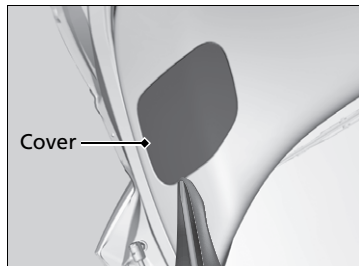
4. Turn the socket anticlockwise and remove it.

5. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

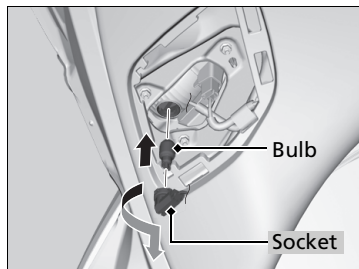
Taillight and Back-Up Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Taillight:	LED Type
Back-Up Light:	16 W



1. Remove the cover by prying on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver.
► Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



2. Turn the socket anticlockwise and remove it.
3. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

► Taillight and Back-Up Light Bulbs

Taillights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Rear Licence Plate Light

Rear licence plate light is LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

High-Mount Brake Light

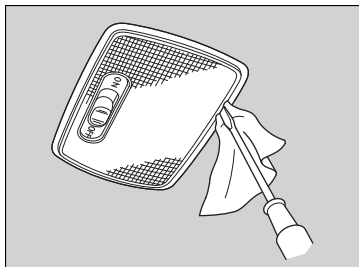
High-mount brake light is LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Other Light Bulbs

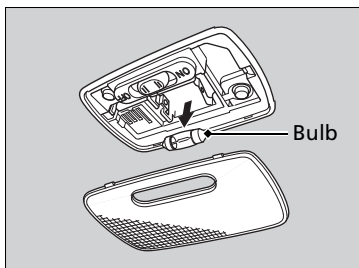
■ Ceiling Light Bulb

When replacing, use the following bulb.

Ceiling Light: 8 W



1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
► Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

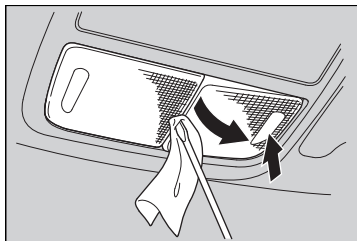


2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

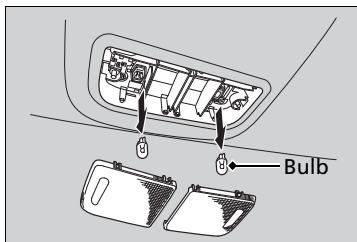
■ Map Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Map Light: 8 W



1. Push on the lens of the opposite side you are replacing.
2. Pry on the edge between the lenses using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
► Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

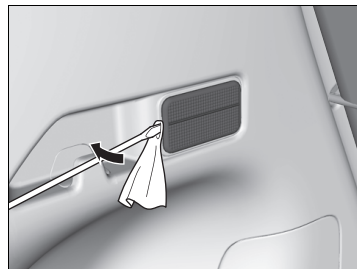


3. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

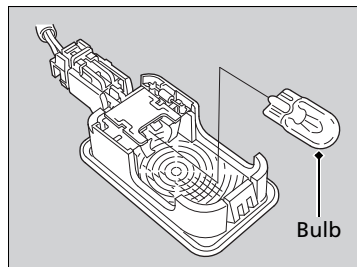
■ Luggage Area Light Bulb

When replacing, use the following bulb.

Luggage Area Light: 5 W



1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
► Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

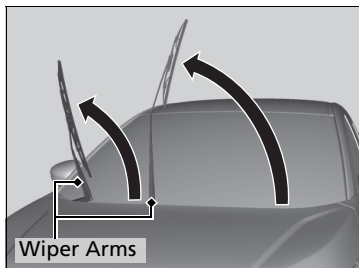


2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

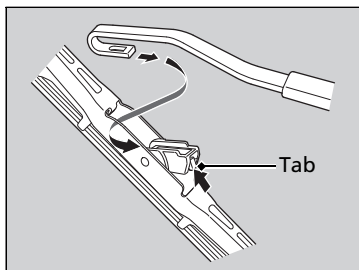
Checking Wiper Blades

If the wiper blade rubber has deteriorated, it will leave streaks and become noisy, and the hard surfaces of the blade may scratch the window glass.

Changing the Front Wiper Blade Rubber



1. Lift the driver side wiper arm first, then the passenger side.

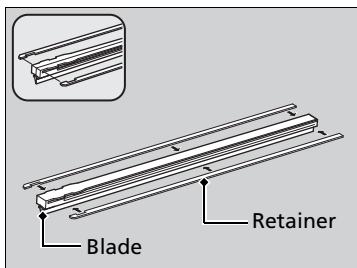
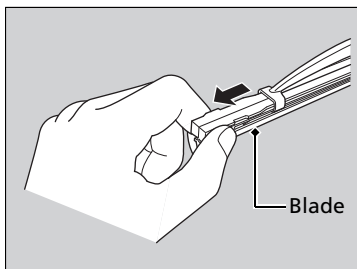


2. Press up on and hold the tab, then slide the holder off the wiper arm.

Changing the Front Wiper Blade Rubber

NOTICE

Avoid dropping the wiper arm onto the windscreen, as it may damage the wiper arm and/or the windscreen.



3. Slide the wiper blade out of the holder by pulling the tabbed end out.

4. Remove the retainers from the wiper blade that has been removed, and mount to a new wiper blade.

► Correctly align the wiper blade protrusion and the retainer grooves.

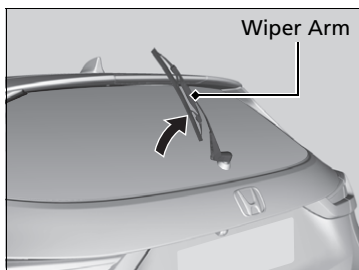
5. Slide the new wiper blade onto the holder from the bottom end.

► The tab on the holder should fit in the indent of the wiper blade.

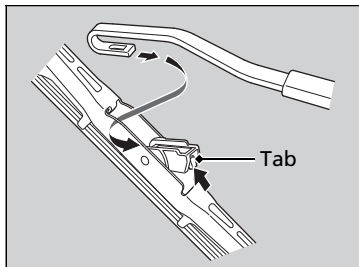
6. Slide the holder onto the wiper arm securely.

7. Lower the passenger side wiper arm first, then the driver side.

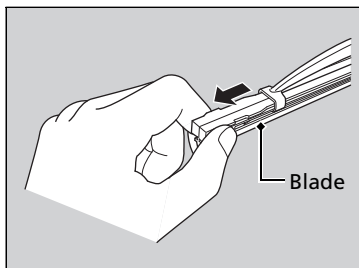
Changing the Rear Wiper Blade Rubber



1. Raise the wiper arm off.



2. Press up on and hold the tab, then slide the holder off the wiper arm.



3. Slide the wiper blade out of the holder by pulling the tabbed end out.

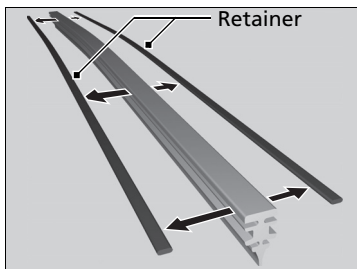
Changing the Rear Wiper Blade Rubber

NOTICE

Do not try to forcefully lift up the wiper arm. The wiper arm may be damaged if it is lifted too high.

NOTICE

Avoid dropping the wiper arm; as it may damage the rear window.



4. Remove the retainers from wiper blade and mount to a new rubber blade.
5. Slide the new wiper blade onto the holder from the bottom end.
 - The tab on the holder should fit in the indent of the wiper blade.
6. Slide the holder onto the wiper arm securely.

Checking Tyres

To safely operate your vehicle, your tyres must be of the proper type and size, in good condition with adequate tread, and properly inflated.

■ Inflation guidelines

Properly inflated tyres provide the best combination of handling, tread life, and comfort. Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.

Underinflated tyres wear unevenly, adversely affect handling and fuel economy, and are more likely to fail from overheating.

Overinflated tyres make your vehicle ride harshly, are more prone to road hazards, and wear unevenly.

Every day before you drive, look at each of the tyres. If one looks lower than the others, check the pressure with a tyre gauge.

At least once a month or before long trips, use a gauge to measure the pressure in all tyres, including the spare. Even tyres in good condition can lose 10-20 kPa (0.1-0.2 bar, 1-2 psi) per month.

⌘ Checking Tyres

WARNING

Using tyres that are excessively worn or improperly inflated can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding tyre inflation and maintenance.

Measure the air pressure when tyres are cold. This means the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours, or driven less than 1.6 km. If necessary, add or release air until the specified pressure is reached.

If checked when hot, tyre pressure can be as much as 30-40 kPa (0.3-0.4 bar, 4-6 psi) higher than if checked when cold.

Have a dealer check the tyres if you feel a consistent vibration while driving. New tyres and any that have been removed and reinstalled should be properly balanced.

■ Inspection guidelines

Every time you check inflation, also examine the tyres and valve stems.

Look for:

- Bumps or bulges on the side or in the tread. Replace the tyre if you find any cuts, splits, or cracks in the side of the tyre. Replace it if you see fabric or cord.
- Remove any foreign objects and inspect for air leaks.
- Uneven tread wear. Have a dealer check the wheel alignment.
- Excessive tread wear.

🔍 **Wear Indicators** P. 379

- Cracks or other damage around valve stem.

► Checking Tyres

High speed driving

We recommend that you do not drive faster than the posted speed limits and conditions allow. If you drive at sustained high speeds (over 160 km/h), adjust the cold tyre pressures as shown below to avoid excessive heat buildup and sudden tyre failure.

Malaysian models with 185/60R15 84H tyre

Tyre Size	185/60R15 84H
Pressure	Front: 250 kPa (2.5 bar, 36 psi) Rear: 230 kPa (2.3 bar, 33 psi)

Thai models with 185/60R15 84H tyre

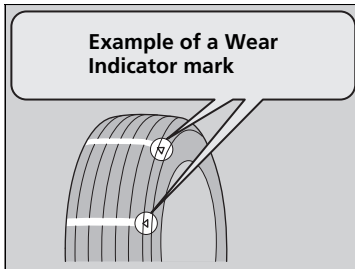
Tyre Size	185/60R15 84H
Pressure	Front: 260 kPa (2.6 bar, 38 psi) Rear: 240 kPa (2.4 bar, 35 psi)

Models with 185/55R16 83V tyre

Models with 185/55R16 87H tyre

Tyre Size	185/55R16 83V 185/55R16 87H
Pressure	Front: 260 kPa (2.6 bar, 38 psi) Rear: 240 kPa (2.4 bar, 35 psi)

Wear Indicators



The groove where the wear indicator is located is about 1.6 mm shallower than elsewhere on the tyre. If the tread has worn so that the indicator is exposed, replace the tyre.

Worn out tyres have poor traction on wet roads.

Tyre Service Life

The life of your tyres is dependent on many factors, including driving habits, road conditions, vehicle loading, inflation pressure, maintenance history, speed, and environmental conditions (even when the tyres are not in use).

In addition to regular inspections and inflation pressure maintenance, it is recommended that you have annual inspections performed once the tyres reach five years old. All tyres, including the spare, should be removed from service after 10 years from the date of manufacture, regardless of their condition or state of wear.

Tyre and Wheel Replacement

Replace your tyres with radials of the same size, load range, speed rating, and maximum cold tyre pressure rating (as shown on the tyre's sidewall). Using tyres of a different size or construction can cause certain vehicle systems such as the ABS and Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system to work incorrectly.

It is best to replace all four tyres at the same time. If that isn't possible, replace the front or rear tyres in pairs.

Make sure that the wheel's specifications match those of the original wheels.

► Tyre and Wheel Replacement

WARNING

Installing improper tyres on your vehicle can affect handling and stability. This can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always use the size and type of tyres recommended in the tyre information label on your vehicle.

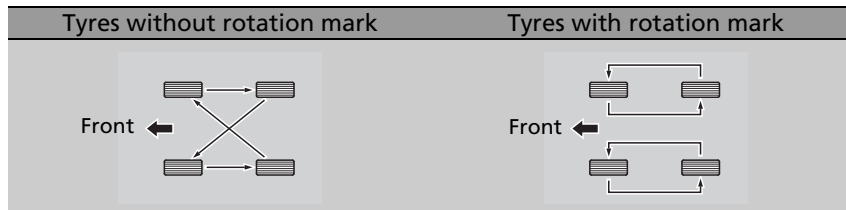
Tyre Rotation

Rotating tyres according to the maintenance schedule helps to distribute wear more evenly and increase tyre life.

■ Your Vehicle's Tyre Rotation Pattern

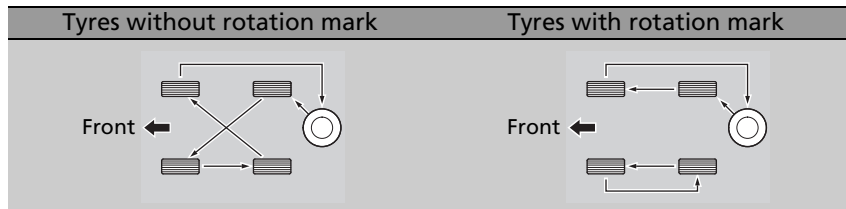
Models with a compact spare tyre

Rotate the tyres as shown here.



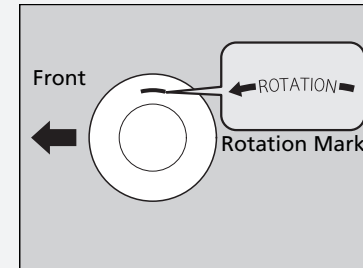
Models with a full-size spare tyre

Rotate the tyres, including a spare, as shown here.



✎ Tyre Rotation

Tyres with directional tread patterns should only be rotated front to back (not from one side to the other). Directional tyres should be mounted with the rotation indication mark facing forward, as shown below.



When the tyres are rotated, make sure the air pressures are checked.

Snow Traction Devices

If driving on snowy or frozen roads, mount winter tyres, or tyre chains; reduce speed; and maintain sufficient distance between vehicles when driving.

Be particularly careful when operating the steering wheel or brakes to prevent skidding.

Use tyre chains, winter tyres, or all season tyres when necessary or according to the law.

When mounting, refer to the following points.

For winter tyres:

- Select the size and load ranges that are the same as the original tyres.
- Mount the tyres to all four wheels.

For tyre chains:

- Consult a dealer before purchasing any type of chains for your vehicle.
- Install them on the front tyres only.
- Because your vehicle has limited tyre clearance, we strongly recommend using the chains listed below:

Philippines and Laotian models

Original Tyre Size*1	Chain Type
185/55R16 87H	RUD-matic classic 48479

*1: Original tyre size is mentioned on the tyre information label on the driver's doorjamb.

► Snow Traction Devices

⚠ WARNING

Using the wrong chains, or not properly installing chains, can damage the brake lines and cause a crash in which you can be seriously injured or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding the selection and use of tyre chains.

NOTICE

Traction devices that are the wrong size or improperly installed can damage your vehicle's brake lines, suspension, body, and wheels. Stop driving if they are hitting any part of the vehicle.

When tyre chains are mounted, follow the chain manufacturer's instructions regarding vehicle operational limits.

Use tyre chains only in an emergency or when they are legally required for driving through a certain area.

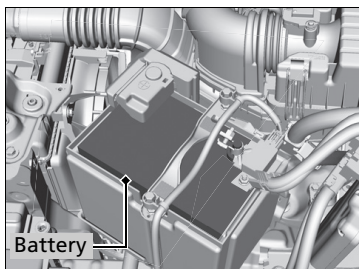
Use greater caution when driving with tyre chains on snow or ice. They may have less-predictable handling than good winter tyres without chains.

- Follow the chain manufacturer's instruction when installing. Mount them as tightly as you can.
- Check that the chains do not touch the brake lines or suspension.
- Drive slowly.

❧ Snow Traction Devices

If your vehicle is equipped with summer tyres, be aware that these tyres are not designed for winter driving conditions. For more information, contact a dealer.

Checking the Battery



The condition of the battery is monitored by a sensor located on the negative terminal of the battery. If there is a problem with this sensor, the information display will display a warning message. If this happens, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer. Check the battery terminals for corrosion monthly.

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead:

- The clock resets.
 - **Clock** P. 142

Battery

⚠ WARNING

The battery gives off explosive hydrogen gas during normal operation.

A spark or open flame can cause the battery to explode with enough force to kill or seriously hurt you.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

Wear protective clothing and a face shield, or have a skilled technician do any battery maintenance.

⚠ WARNING

The battery contains sulfuric acid (electrolyte) which is highly corrosive and poisonous.

Getting electrolyte in your eyes or on your skin can cause serious burns. Wear protective clothing and eye protection when working on or near the battery.

Swallowing electrolyte can cause fatal poisoning if immediate action is not taken.

KEEP OUT OF THE REACH OF CHILDREN

Charging the Battery

Disconnect both battery cables to prevent damaging your vehicle's electrical system. Always disconnect the negative (-) cable first, and reconnect it last.

⌘ Battery

Emergency Procedures

Eyes: Flush with water from a cup or other container for at least 15 minutes. (Water under pressure can damage the eye.) Call a physician immediately.

Skin: Remove contaminated clothing. Flush the skin with large quantities of water. Call a physician immediately.

Swallowing: Drink water or milk. Call a physician immediately.

When you find corrosion, clean the battery terminals by applying a baking powder and water solution.

Clean the terminals with a damp towel. Cloth/towel dry the battery. Coat the terminals with grease to help prevent future corrosion.

When replacing the battery, the replacement must be of the same specifications.

Consult a dealer for more information.

Models with Auto Idle Stop

The battery installed in this vehicle is specifically designed for a model with Auto Idle Stop.

Using a battery other than this specified type may shorten the battery life, and prevent Auto Idle Stop from activating. If you need to replace the battery, make sure to select the specified type and size. Ask a dealer for more details.

➤ **Specifications** P. 442

» Battery

The Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, vehicle stability assist (VSA) **OFF**, Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS), Road Departure Mitigation, and safety support indicator may come on in amber along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Replacing the Remote Battery

If the indicator does not come on when the button is pressed, replace the battery.



Battery type: CR2032

1. Remove the built-in key.

Replacing the Remote Battery

⚠ ⚠ WARNING

CHEMICAL BURN HAZARD

The battery that powers the remote transmitter can cause severe internal burns and can even lead to death if swallowed. Keep new and used batteries away from children.

If you suspect that a child has swallowed the battery, seek medical attention immediately.

CAUTION: Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or equivalent type.

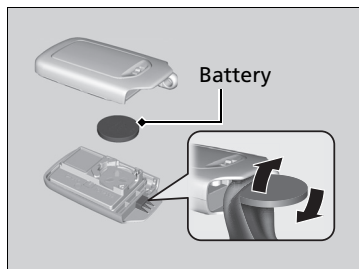
CAUTION: Do not exposed to excessive heat such as sunshine, fire or the like, that can result in an explosion or the leakage of flammable liquid or gas during use, storage or transportation.

CAUTION: Do not dispose of a battery into fire or a hot oven, or give mechanically crushing or cutting of a battery, that can result in an explosion.

CAUTION: Do not subjected to extremely low air pressure at high altitude that may result in an explosion or the leakage of flammable liquid or gas.

A warning mark is located adjacent to the button battery*.

* Not available on all models



2. With the buttons facing down, remove the upper half of the cover by carefully prying on the edge with a coin.
 - Wrap a coin with a cloth to prevent scratching the keyless remote.
3. Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.

► Replacing the Remote Battery

NOTICE

An improperly disposed of battery can damage the environment. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

Replacement batteries are commercially available or at a dealer.

Dust and Pollen Filter

■ When to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter

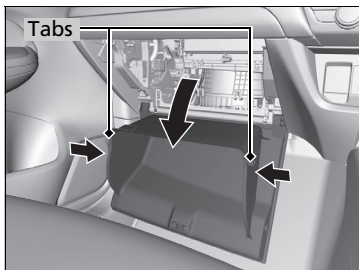
Replace the dust and pollen filter according to your vehicle's recommended maintenance schedule. It is recommended to replace the filter even sooner if the vehicle has been driven in a dusty environment.

🔧 **Maintenance Schedule** P. 338

■ How to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter



1. Open the glove box.



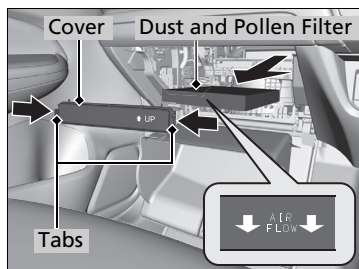
2. Disengage the two tabs by pushing on each side panel.

3. Pivot the glove box out of the way.

🔧 Dust and Pollen Filter

If the airflow from the cooling system*/climate control system* deteriorates noticeably, and the windows fog up easily, the filter may need to be replaced.

The dust and pollen filter collects pollen, dust, and other debris in the air.



4. Push in the tabs on the corners of the filter case cover, and remove it.
5. Remove the filter from the case.
6. Install a new filter in the case.
 - Put the **AIR FLOW** arrow directed side down.

» Dust and Pollen Filter

If you are not sure how to replace the dust and pollen filter, have it replaced by a dealer.

Interior Care

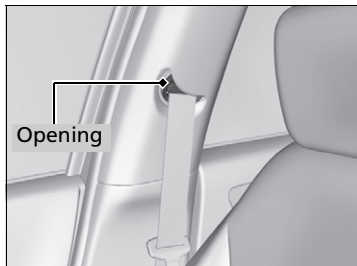
Use a vacuum cleaner to remove dust before using a cloth.

Use a damp cloth with a mixture of mild detergent and warm water to remove dirt.

Use a clean cloth to remove detergent residue.

Cleaning Seat Belts

Use a soft brush with a mixture of mild soap and warm water to clean the seat belts. Let the belts air dry. Wipe the openings of the seat belt anchorages using a clean cloth.



Interior Care

Do not spill liquids inside the vehicle.

Electrical devices and systems may malfunction if liquids are splashed on them.

Do not use silicone-based sprays on electrical devices such as audio devices and switches.

Doing so may cause the items to malfunction or cause a fire inside the vehicle.

If a silicone-based spray is inadvertently used on electrical devices, consult a dealer.

Depending on their composition, chemicals and liquid aromatics may cause discolouration, wrinkles, and cracking to resin-based parts and textiles.

Do not use alkali solvents or organic solvents such as benzene or petrol.

After using chemicals, make sure to gently wipe them away using a dry cloth.

Do not place used cloths on top of resin-based parts or textiles for long periods of time without washing.

Be careful not to spill a liquid type air freshener.

■ Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

►► Cleaning the Window

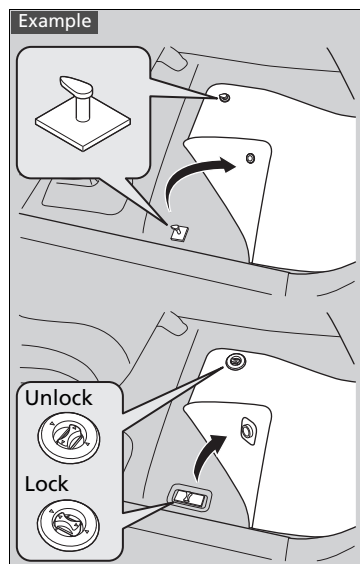
Wires are mounted to the inside of the rear window. Wipe along the same direction as the wires with a soft cloth so as not to damage them.

Be careful not to spill fluids, such as water or glass cleaner, on or around the cover of the electrical components around the rearview mirror.

■ Floor Mats

►► Floor Mats

If you use any floor mats that were not originally provided with your vehicle, make sure they are designed for your specific vehicle, fit correctly, and are securely anchored by the floor anchorages. Position any rear seat floor mats properly. If not properly positioned, the floor mats can interfere with the front seat functions.



The driver's floor mat hooks over floor anchorages, which keep the mat from sliding forward.

Do not put any additional floor mats on top of the anchored mat.

■ Maintaining Genuine Leather*

To properly clean leather:

1. Use a vacuum or soft dry cloth first to remove any dirt or dust.
2. Clean the leather with a soft cloth dampened with a solution comprised of 90% water and 10% neutral soap.
3. Wipe away any soap residue with a clean damp cloth.
4. Wipe away residual water and allow leather to air dry in the shade.

▣ Maintaining Genuine Leather*

It is important to clean or wipe away dirt or dust as soon as possible. Spills can soak into leather, resulting in stains. Dirt or dust can cause abrasions in the leather. In addition, please note that some dark coloured clothing can rub onto the leather seats, resulting in discolouration or stains.

* Not available on all models

Exterior Care

Dust off the vehicle body after you drive. Regularly inspect your vehicle for scratches on painted surfaces. A scratch on a painted surface can result in body rust. If you find a scratch, promptly repair it.

■ Washing the Vehicle

Wash the vehicle regularly. Wash more frequently when driving in the following conditions:

- If driving on roads with road salt.
- If driving in coastal areas.
- If tar, soot, bird droppings, insects, or tree sap is stuck to painted surfaces.

■ Using an Automated Car Wash

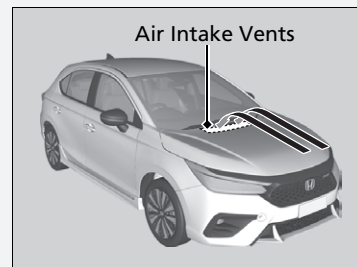
- Make sure to follow the instructions indicated on the automated car wash.
- Fold in the door mirrors.

■ Using High Pressure Cleaners

- Keep sufficient distance between the cleaning nozzle and the vehicle body.
- Take particular care around the windows. Standing too close may cause water to enter the vehicle interior.
- Do not spray high pressure water directly into the engine compartment. Instead, use low pressure water and a mild detergent.
- Do not spray water directly onto the camera* or the area around it. Water may enter the lens and cause the camera to malfunction.

⌘ Washing the Vehicle

Do not spray water into the air intake vents. It can cause a malfunction.



■ Applying Wax

A good coat of automotive body wax helps to protect your vehicle's paint from the elements. Wax will wear off over time and expose your vehicle's paint to the elements, so reapply as necessary.

■ Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin-Coated Parts

If you get petrol, oil, engine coolant, or battery fluid on resin-coated parts, they may stain or the coating may peel. Promptly wipe it away using a soft cloth and clean water.

■ Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

■ Maintaining Aluminium Wheels

Aluminium is susceptible to deterioration caused by salt and other road contaminants. When necessary, as early as possible use a sponge and mild detergent to wipe away these contaminants. Do not use a stiff brush or harsh chemicals (including some commercial wheel cleaners). These can damage the protective finish on aluminium alloy wheels, resulting in corrosion. Depending on the type of finish, the wheels also may lose their lustre or appear burnished. To avoid water stains, wipe the wheels dry with a cloth while they are still wet.

» Applying Wax

NOTICE

Chemical solvents and strong cleaners can damage the paint, metal, and plastic on your vehicle. Wipe away spills immediately.

» Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin-Coated Parts

Ask a dealer about the correct coating material when you want to repair the painted surface of the parts made of resin.

■ Fogged Exterior Light Lenses

The inside lenses of exterior lights (headlights, brake lights, etc.) may fog temporarily if you have driven in the rain, or after the vehicle has been run through a car wash. Dew condensation also may build up inside the lenses when there is a significant enough difference between the ambient and inside lens temperatures (similar to vehicle windows fogging up in rainy conditions). These conditions are natural processes, not structural design problems in the exterior lights.

Lens design characteristics may result in moisture developing on the light lens frame surfaces. This also is not a malfunction.

However, if you see large amounts of water accumulation, or large water drops building up inside the lenses, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Accessories

When installing accessories, check the following:

- Do not install accessories on the windscreen. They can obstruct your view and delay your reaction to driving conditions.
- Do not install any items other than Honda Genuine Accessories designated for your vehicle over areas marked **SRS AIRBAG**, on the sides or backs of the front seats, on front or side pillars, or near the side windows.
Items other than Honda Genuine Accessories designated for your vehicle installed in these areas may interfere with proper operation of the vehicle's airbags or may be propelled into you or another occupant if the airbags deploy.
- Be sure electronic accessories do not overload electrical circuits or interfere with proper operation of your vehicle.
 - **Fuses** P. 425
- Before installing any electronic accessory, have the installer contact a dealer for assistance. If possible, have a dealer inspect the final installation.

Accessories and Modifications

WARNING

Improper accessories or modifications can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and performance, and cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding accessories and modifications.

When properly installed, mobile phones, alarms, two-way radios, radio antennas, and low-powered audio systems should not interfere with your vehicle's computer controlled systems, such as your airbags and anti-lock brakes.

Honda Genuine Accessories are recommended to ensure proper operation on your vehicle.

Some Honda Genuine Accessories are supplied with an exclusive owner's manual for the operation and care detail of the product. If an accessory owner's manual is provided to you, please refer to it for full detail.

If any Honda Genuine Accessories become inoperable, refer to the separate accessory owner's manual (if applicable) or consult a dealer for assistance to troubleshoot the potential faulty condition.

Modifications

Do not modify your vehicle in a manner that may affect its handling, stability, or reliability, or install non-genuine Honda parts or accessories that may have a similar effect.

Even minor modifications to vehicle systems can affect overall vehicle performance. Always make sure all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and do not make any modification to your vehicle or its systems that might cause your vehicle to no longer meet your country's and local regulations.

The on-board diagnostic port (OBD-II/SAE J1962 connector) installed on this vehicle is intended to be used with automobile system diagnostic devices or with other devices that Honda has approved. Use of any other type of device may adversely affect the vehicle's electronic systems or allow them to be compromised, possibly resulting in a system malfunction, drained battery, or other unexpected problems.

Do not modify or attempt to repair any of the electrical components.

Handling the Unexpected

This chapter explains how to handle unexpected troubles.

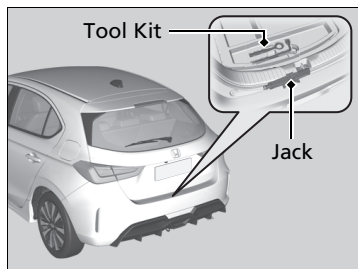
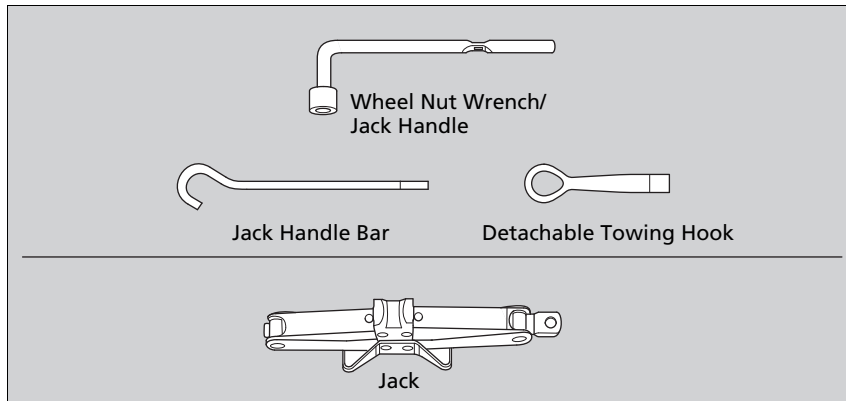


Tools	
Types of Tools.....	400
If a Tyre Goes Flat	
Changing a Flat Tyre	401
Engine Does Not Start	
Checking the Engine	409
If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak ..	410
Emergency Engine Stop	411
If the Battery Is Dead	
Jump Starting Procedure	412
Shift Lever Does Not Move	416

Overheating	
How to Handle Overheating.....	417
Indicator Coming On/Blinking	
If the Engine Oil Pressure Low Warning Appears	422
If the Charging System Indicator Comes On	423
If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks	423
If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On	424

If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On	424
Fuses	
Fuse Locations	425
Inspecting and Changing Fuses.....	438
Emergency Towing	439
If You Cannot Open the Tailgate	440

Types of Tools



Types of Tools

The tools are stored in the luggage area.

Changing a Flat Tyre

If a tyre goes flat while driving, grasp the steering wheel firmly, and brake gradually to reduce speed. Then, stop in a safe place. Replace the flat tyre with a spare tyre. Go to a dealer as soon as possible to have the full-size tyre repaired or replaced.

1. Park the vehicle on a firm, level, non-slippery surface and apply the parking brake.

Continuously variable transmission models

2. Put the transmission into **P**.

Manual transmission models

2. Put the transmission into **R**.

All models

3. Turn on the hazard warning lights and set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

Changing a Flat Tyre

Follow compact spare* precautions:

Periodically check the tyre pressure of the compact spare. It should be set to the specified pressure.

Specified Pressure: 420 kPa (4.2 bar, 60 psi)

When driving with the compact spare tyre, keep the vehicle speed under 80 km/h. Replace with a regular tyre as soon as possible.

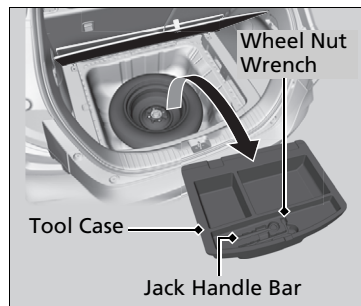
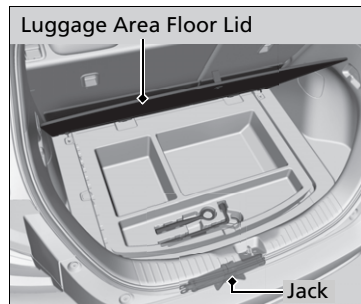
The compact spare tyre and wheel in your vehicle are specifically for this model. Do not use them with another vehicle. Do not use another type of compact spare tyre or wheel with your vehicle.

Do not mount tyre chains on a compact spare tyre. If a chain-mounted front tyre goes flat, remove one of the regular rear tyres and replace it with the compact spare tyre. Remove the flat front tyre and replace it with the regular tyre that was removed from the rear. Mount the tyre chains on the front tyre.

A compact spare tyre gives a harsher ride and less traction on some road surfaces. Use greater caution while driving.

* Not available on all models

■ Getting Ready to Replace the Flat Tyre



1. Open the luggage area floor lid.
2. Take the tool case out of the luggage area.
3. Take the wheel nut wrench and jack handle bar out of the tool case.

► Changing a Flat Tyre

The compact spare tyre is smaller than the regular tyre. Your vehicle's ground clearance reduces when the compact spare tyre is installed. Driving over road debris or bumps could possibly damage the underside of your vehicle.

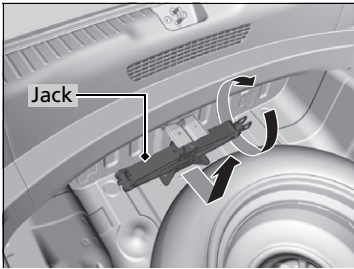
WARNING: The jack can only be used for helping an emergency vehicle breakdown, not for changing the regular seasonal tyre or any other normal maintenance or repair operation.

The shape of the tool case varies by model.

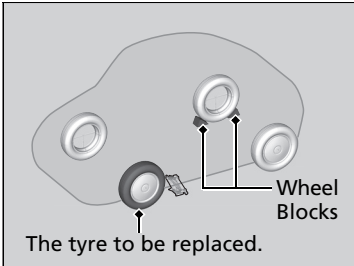
NOTICE

Do not use the jack if it doesn't work properly. Call your dealer or a professional towing service.

Do not use more than one compact spare tyre at the same time.



4. Take the jack out of the luggage area.
► Remove the jack by turning the jack's end bracket to the left to loosen it.
5. Unscrew the wing bolt, and remove the spacer cone. Then, remove the spare tyre.



6. Place a wheel block or rock in front and rear of the wheel diagonal to the flat tyre.

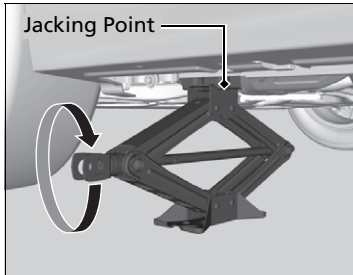
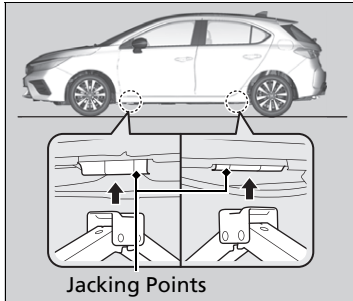


7. Place the spare tyre (wheel side up) under the vehicle body, near the tyre that needs to be replaced.



8. Loosen each wheel nut about one turn using the wheel nut wrench.

How to Set Up the Jack



1. Place the jack under the jacking point closest to the tyre to be changed.

2. Turn the end bracket clockwise as shown in the image until the top of the jack contacts the jacking point.

► Make sure that the jacking point tab is resting in the jack notch.

How to Set Up the Jack

⚠ WARNING

The vehicle can easily roll off the jack, seriously injuring anyone underneath.

Follow the directions for changing a tyre exactly, and no person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

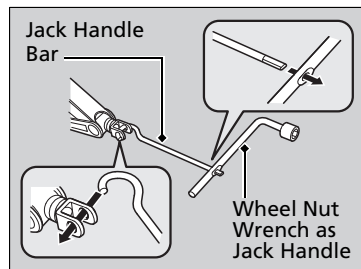
WARNING: The jack shall be placed on a flat and stable surface on the same level as the vehicle is parked.

Indonesian models

The jack that came with your vehicle has the following label.

1.	2.	3.

1. See Owner's Manual.
2. Never get under vehicle when supported by jack.
3. Place jack underneath reinforced area.



3. Raise the vehicle, using the jack handle bar and the jack handle, until the tyre is off the ground.

► How to Set Up the Jack

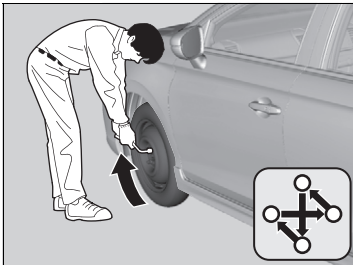
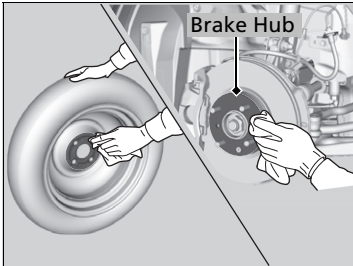
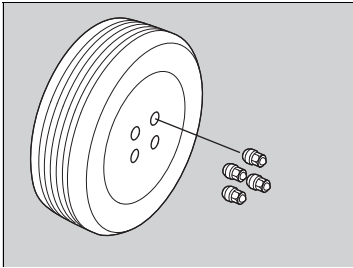
Do not use the jack with people or luggage in the vehicle.

Use the jack provided in your vehicle. Other jacks may not support the weight ("load") or may not fit the jacking point.

The following instructions must be followed to use the jack safely:

- Do not use while the engine is running.
- Use only where the ground is firm and level.
- Use only at the jacking points.
- Do not get in the vehicle while using the jack.
- Do not put anything on top of or underneath the jack.

■ Replacing the Flat Tyre



1. Remove the wheel nuts and flat tyre.

2. Wipe the mounting surfaces of the wheel with a clean cloth.

3. Mount the spare tyre.

4. Screw the wheel nuts until they touch the lips around the mounting holes, then stop rotating.

5. Lower the vehicle and remove the jack. Tighten the wheel nuts in the order indicated in the image. Go around, tightening the nuts, two to three times in this order.

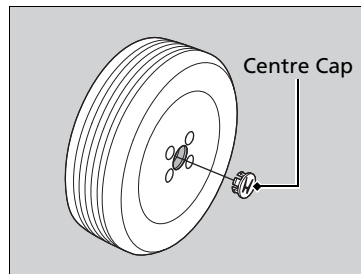
Wheel nut torque:

108 N·m (11 kgf·m, 80 lbf·ft)

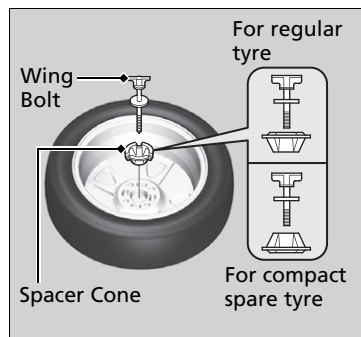
►► Replacing the Flat Tyre

Do not over tighten the wheel nuts by applying extra torque using your foot or a pipe.

■ Storing the Flat Tyre



1. Remove the centre cap.



2. Place the flat tyre face down in the spare tyre well.
3. Remove the spacer cone from the wing bolt, flip it over, and insert it back on the bolt. Secure the flat tyre with the wing bolt.
4. Securely store the wheel nut wrench and jack handle bar back in the tool bag. Store the tool bag and jack in the luggage area.

►► Storing the Flat Tyre

⚠ WARNING

Loose items can fly around the interior in a crash and can seriously injure the occupants.
Store the wheel, jack, and tools securely before driving.

Checking the Engine

If the engine does not start, check the starter.

Starter condition	Checklist
Starter doesn't turn or turns over slowly. The battery may be dead. Check each of the items on the right and respond accordingly.	Check for a message on the driver information interface. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• If the To start, touch start button with emblem side of remote^{*1}/To Start, Hold Remote Near Start Button^{*2} message appears<ul style="list-style-type: none">➤ If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak P. 410➤ Make sure the keyless remote is in its operating range➤ ENGINE START/STOP Button Operating Range P. 163
The starter turns over normally but the engine doesn't start. There may be a problem with a fuse. Check each of the items on the right and respond accordingly.	Review the engine start procedure. Follow its instructions, and try to start the engine again. <ul style="list-style-type: none">➤ Starting the Engine P. 222 Check the immobilizer system indicator. When the immobilizer system indicator is blinking, the engine cannot be started. <ul style="list-style-type: none">➤ Immobilizer System P. 159➤ Immobilizer System Indicator P. 93 Check the fuel level. There should be enough fuel in the tank. ➤ Fuel Gauge P. 100
	Check the fuses. Check all fuses, or have the vehicle checked by a dealer. <ul style="list-style-type: none">➤ Inspecting and Changing Fuses P. 438 If the problem continues: <ul style="list-style-type: none">➤ Emergency Towing P. 439

If you must start the vehicle immediately, use an assisting vehicle or booster battery to jump start it.

➤ **If the Battery Is Dead** P. 412

Do not hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button for more than 15 seconds.

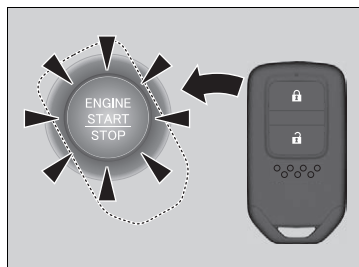
*1: Models with A-type meter

*2: Models with B-type meter

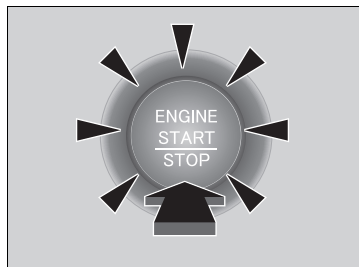
If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak

If the beeper sounds, **To start, touch start button with emblem side of remote***¹/**To Start, Hold Remote Near Start Button**^{*2} message appears on the driver information interface.

Start the engine as follows:



1. Touch the centre of the **ENGINE START/STOP** button with the **H** logo on the keyless remote while the **ENGINE START/STOP** button is flashing. The buttons on the keyless remote should be facing you.
 - The **ENGINE START/STOP** button flashes for about 30 seconds.



2. Depress the brake pedal (continuously variable transmission) or clutch pedal (manual transmission) and press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button within 10 seconds after the beeper sounds and the **ENGINE START/STOP** button changes from flashing to on.
 - If you don't depress the pedal, the mode will change to ACCESSORY.

*1 : Models with A-type meter

*2 : Models with B-type meter

Emergency Engine Stop

The **ENGINE START/STOP** button may be used to stop the engine due to an emergency situation even while driving. If you must stop the engine, do either of the following operations:

- Press and hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button for about two seconds.
- Firmly press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button three times.

The steering wheel will not lock. However, because turning off the engine disables the power assist the engine provides to the steering and braking systems, it will require significantly more physical effort and time to steer and slow the vehicle. Use both feet on the brake pedal to slow down the vehicle and stop immediately in a safe place.

Continuously variable transmission models

The power mode is in ACCESSORY when the engine is stopped.
To change the mode to VEHICLE OFF, put the transmission into **[P]** after the vehicle comes to a complete stop.
Then press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button twice without depressing the brake pedal.

Manual transmission models

The power mode changes to VEHICLE OFF.

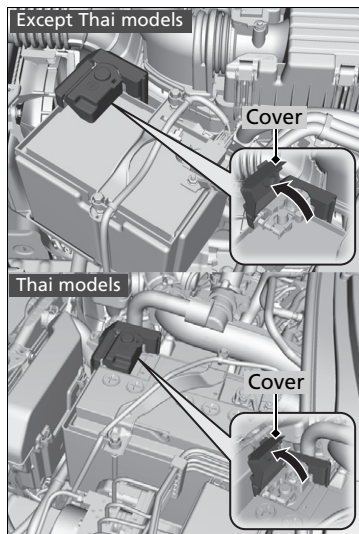
Emergency Engine Stop

Do not press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button while driving unless it is absolutely necessary for the engine to be turned off.

If you press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button while driving, the beeper sounds.

Jump Starting Procedure

Turn off the power to electric devices, such as audio and lights. Turn off the engine, then open the bonnet.



1. Open the terminal cover on your vehicle's battery positive ⊕ terminal.

Jump Starting Procedure

⚠ WARNING

A battery can explode if you do not follow the correct procedure, seriously injuring anyone nearby.

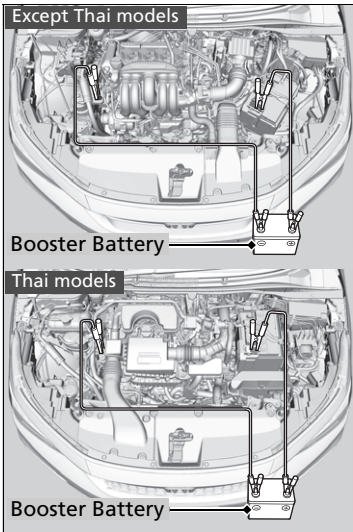
Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

NOTICE

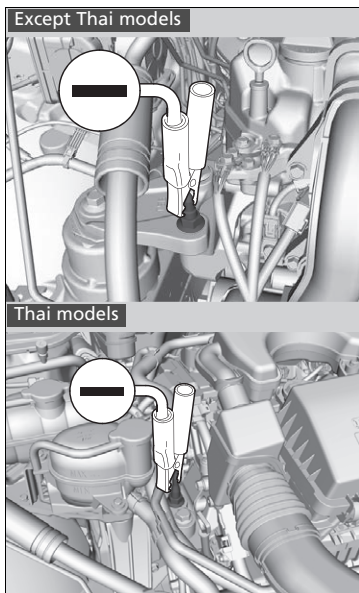
If a battery sits in extreme cold, the electrolyte inside can freeze. Attempting to jump start with a frozen battery can cause it to rupture.

Securely attach the jumper cables clips so that they do not come off when the engine vibrates. Be careful not to tangle the jumper cables or allow the cable ends to touch each other while attaching or detaching the jumper cables.

Battery performance degrades in cold conditions and may prevent the engine from starting.



2. Connect the first jumper cable to your vehicle's battery \oplus terminal.
3. Connect the other end of the first jumper cable to the booster battery \oplus terminal.
 - Use a 12-volt booster battery only.
 - When using an automotive battery charger to boost your 12-volt battery, select a lower charging voltage than 15-volt. Check the charger manual for the proper setting.
4. Connect the second jumper cable to the booster battery \ominus terminal.



5. Connect the other end of the second jumper cable to the engine mounting bolt as shown. Do not connect this jumper cable to any other part.
6. If your vehicle is connected to another vehicle, start the assisting vehicle's engine and increase its RPM slightly.
7. Attempt to start your vehicle's engine. If it turns over slowly, check that the jumper cables have good metal-to-metal contact.

■ What to Do After the Engine Starts

Once your vehicle's engine has started, remove the jumper cables in the following order.

1. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's ground.
2. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery ⊖ terminal.
3. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's battery ⊕ terminal.
4. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery ⊕ terminal.

Have your vehicle inspected by a nearby service station or a dealer.

⌘ If the Battery Is Dead

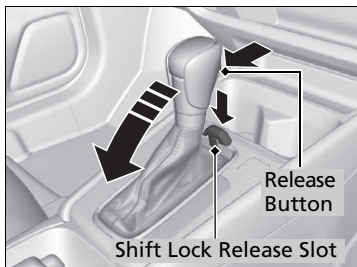
The Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, vehicle stability assist (VSA) **OFF**, safety support, Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS), and Road Departure Mitigation indicator may come on in amber along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. Each indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Shift Lever Does Not Move

Continuously variable transmission models

Follow the procedure below if you cannot move the shift lever out of the **P** position.

Releasing the Lock



1. Set the parking brake.
2. Remove the built-in key from the keyless remote.
3. Insert the key into the shift lock release slot.
4. While pushing the key down, press the shift lever release button, and place the shift lever into **N**.
 - The lock is now released. Have the shift lever checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

Except Thai models

How to Handle Overheating

Overheating symptoms are as follows:

- The temperature gauge is at the **H** mark or the engine suddenly loses power.
- The **Engine temperature too hot. Do not drive. Allow engine to cool.*1/ Engine Temperature Too Hot. Allow Engine To Cool.*2** message appears on the driver information interface.
- Steam or spray comes out of the engine compartment.

■ First thing to do

1. Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place.
2. Turn off all accessories and turn on the hazard warning lights.
 - ▶ **No steam or spray present:**
Keep the engine running and open the bonnet.
 - ▶ **Steam or spray is present:**
Turn off the engine and wait until it subsides. Then, open the bonnet.

*1: Models with A-type meter

*2: Models with B-type meter

» How to Handle Overheating

WARNING

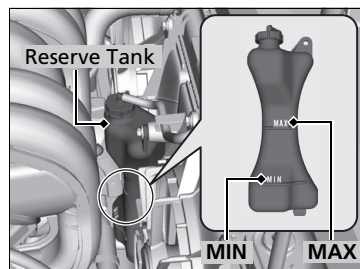
Steam and spray from an overheated engine can seriously scald you.

Do not open the bonnet if steam is coming out.

NOTICE

Continuing to drive with the **Engine temperature too hot. Do not drive. Allow engine to cool.*1/ Engine Temperature Too Hot. Allow Engine To Cool.*2** message on the driver information interface may damage the engine.

■ Next thing to do



1. Check that the cooling fan is operating and stop the engine once the **Engine temperature too hot. Do not drive. Allow engine to cool.*1/Engine Temperature Too Hot. Allow Engine To Cool.*2** message on the driver information interface disappears.

- If the cooling fan is not operating, immediately stop the engine.

2. Once the engine has cooled down, inspect the coolant level and check the cooling system components for leaks.

- If the coolant level in the reserve tank is low, add coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.

- If there is no coolant in the reserve tank, check that the radiator is cool. Cover the radiator cap with a heavy cloth and open the cap. If necessary, add coolant up to the base of the filler neck, and put the cap back on.

► How to Handle Overheating

⚠ WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

If the coolant is leaking, contact a dealer for repairs.

Use water as an emergency/temporary measure only. Have a dealer flush the system with proper antifreeze as soon as possible.

*1 : Models with A-type meter

*2 : Models with B-type meter

■ Last thing to do

Once the engine has cooled sufficiently, restart it.

If the **Engine temperature too hot. Do not drive. Allow engine to cool.**^{*1/}

Engine Temperature Too Hot. Allow Engine To Cool.^{*2} message does not appear, resume driving. If it appears again, contact a dealer for repairs.

*1: Models with A-type meter

*2: Models with B-type meter

Thai models

How to Handle Overheating

Overheating symptoms are as follows:

- The temperature gauge is at the **H** mark or the engine suddenly loses power.
- The **Engine temperature too hot. Do not drive. Allow engine to cool.** message appears on the driver information interface.
- Steam or spray comes out of the engine compartment.

■ First thing to do

1. Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place.
2. Turn off all accessories and turn on the hazard warning lights.

► No steam or spray present:

Keep the engine running and open the bonnet.

► Steam or spray is present:

Turn off the engine and wait until it subsides. Then, open the bonnet.

►► How to Handle Overheating

⚠ WARNING

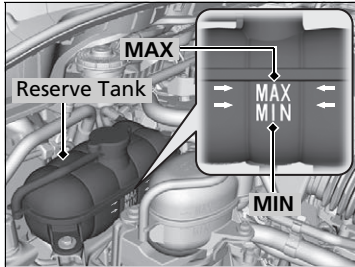
Steam and spray from an overheated engine can seriously scald you.

Do not open the bonnet if steam is coming out.

NOTICE

Continuing to drive with the **Engine temperature too hot. Do not drive. Allow engine to cool.** message on the driver information interface may damage the engine.

■ Next thing to do



1. Check that the cooling fan is operating and stop the engine once the **Engine temperature too hot. Do not drive. Allow engine to cool.** message on the driver information interface disappears.
 - If the cooling fan is not operating, immediately stop the engine.
2. Once the engine has cooled down, inspect the coolant level and check the cooling system components for leaks.
 - If the coolant level in the reserve tank is low, add coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
 - If there is no coolant in the reserve tank, check that the radiator is cool. Cover the reserve tank cap with a heavy cloth and open the cap. If necessary, add coolant up to the base of the filler neck, and put the cap back on.

■ Last thing to do

Once the engine has cooled sufficiently, restart it.

If the **Engine temperature too hot. Do not drive. Allow engine to cool.** message does not appear, resume driving. If it appears again, contact a dealer for repairs.

►► How to Handle Overheating

⚠ WARNING

Removing the reserve tank cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the reserve tank cap.

If the coolant is leaking, contact a dealer for repairs.

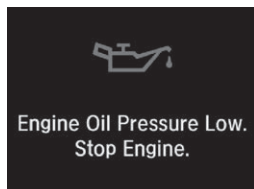
Use water as an emergency/temporary measure only. Have a dealer flush the system with proper antifreeze as soon as possible.

If the Engine Oil Pressure Low Warning Appears

Models with A-type meter



Models with B-type meter



Reasons for the warning to appear

Appears when the engine oil pressure is low.

What to do as soon as the warning appears

1. Immediately park the vehicle on level ground in a safe place.
2. If necessary, turn the hazard warning lights on.

What to do after parking the vehicle

1. Stop the engine and let it sit for approximately three minutes.
2. Open the bonnet and check the oil level.

➤ **Oil Check** P. 350

3. Start the engine and check the **Engine oil pressure low^{*1}/Engine Oil Pressure Low^{*2}** warning.

- ▶ The warning disappears: Start driving again.
- ▶ The warning does not disappear: Immediately stop the engine and contact a dealer for repairs.

If the Engine Oil Pressure Low Warning Appears

NOTICE

Running the engine with low oil pressure can cause serious mechanical damage almost immediately.

*1 : Models with A-type meter

*2 : Models with B-type meter

If the Charging System Indicator Comes On



■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

Comes on when there is a problem with the charging system.

■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Turn off the cooling system*/climate control system*, rear demister, and other electrical systems, and immediately contact a dealer for repairs.

If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks



■ Reasons for the indicator lamp to come on or blink

- Comes on when there is a problem with the engine emissions control system.
- Blinks when engine misfiring is detected.

■ What to do when the indicator lamp comes on

Avoid high speeds and immediately get your vehicle inspected at a dealer.

■ What to do when the indicator lamp blinks

Park the vehicle in a safe place with no flammable items and wait at least 10 minutes or more with the engine stopped until it cools.

►► If the Charging System Indicator Comes On

If you need to stop temporarily, do not turn off the engine. Restarting the engine may rapidly discharge the battery.

►► If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks

NOTICE

If you drive with the malfunction indicator lamp on, the emissions control system and the engine could be damaged.

If the malfunction indicator lamp blinks again when restarting the engine, drive to the nearest dealer at 50 km/h or less. Have your vehicle inspected.

* Not available on all models

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On



■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

- The brake fluid is low.
- There is a malfunction in the brake system.

■ What to do when the indicator comes on while driving

Depress the brake pedal lightly to check pedal pressure.

- If normal, check the brake fluid level the next time you stop.
- If abnormal, take immediate action. If necessary, downshift the transmission to slow the vehicle using engine braking.

If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On



■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

Comes on when there is a problem with the EPS system.

■ What to do when the indicator comes on

- Stop the vehicle in a safe place and restart the engine.
If the indicator comes on and stays on, immediately have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.
- If **Do not drive***1/**Do Not Drive***2 displays on the driver information interface, immediately stop in a safe place and contact a dealer.

►► If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On

Have your vehicle repaired immediately.
It is dangerous to drive with low brake fluid. If there is no resistance from the brake pedal, stop immediately in a safe place. If necessary downshift the gears.

If the brake system indicator (red) and **ABS** indicator come on simultaneously, the electronic brake distribution system is not working. This can result in vehicle instability under sudden braking. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer immediately.

*1: Models with A-type meter

*2: Models with B-type meter

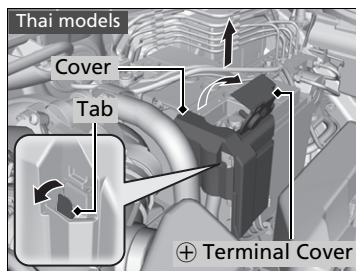
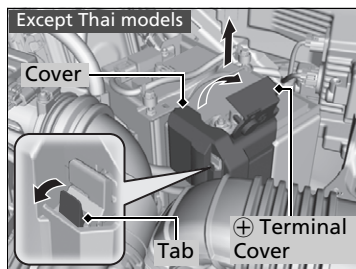
Fuse Locations

If any electrical devices are not working, set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) and check to see if any applicable fuse is blown.

There are two fuse boxes in the engine compartment.

Engine Compartment Fuse Box (Type A)

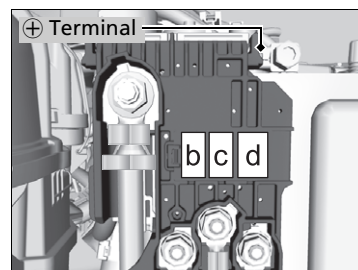
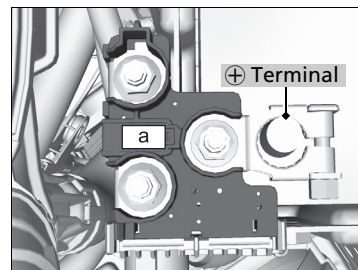
Located near the ⊕ terminal on the battery.



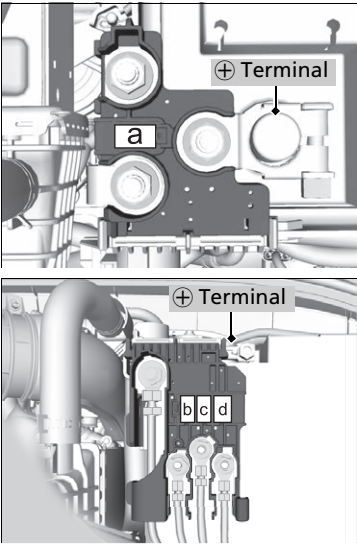
1. Open the ⊕ terminal cover.
 2. Remove the cover by pulling the tab as shown.
- Replacement of engine compartment fuses should be done by a dealer.





■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

Except Thai models



Thai models



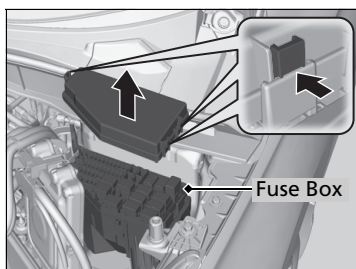
	Circuit Protected	Amps
a 	MAIN	100 A* ¹ 150 A* ²
b 	RB MAIN 1	70 A
c 	RB MAIN 2	80 A
d 	CAP MAIN	70 A

*1:Except Thai models
*2:Thai models

Except Thai models

■ Engine Compartment Fuse Box (Type B)

Located in the back of the engine compartment on the left side.
Push the tabs to open the box.



Fuse locations are shown on the fuse box cover.
Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and box cover mark.

■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

		Circuit Protected	Amps
1		Wiper	30 A
2		—	(20 A)
3		Hazard	10 A
4		Stop	10 A
5	—	—	—
6	—	—	—
7	—	—	—
8		IGP	15 A
9		IG Coil	15 A
10		DBW	15 A
11		ABS/VSA MTR	40 A
12		Main Fan	30 A
13		ST Magnetic SW	30 A
14		MG Clutch	7.5 A
15		Battery Sensor	7.5 A

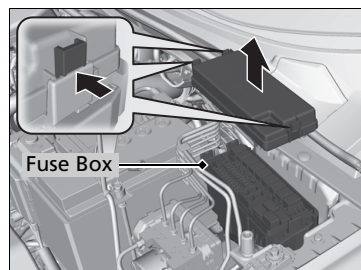
		Circuit Protected	Amps
16		Transmission Control Unit*	(10 A)
17		Back Up FI-ECU	10 A
18		Horn	10 A
19		Front Fog Light*	(10 A)
20		Front Fog Light*	(15 A)
21		Back Up Main	(15 A)
22		Back Up	10 A
23		Sub Fan	(30 A)
24		ABS/VSA FSR	30 A
25		IGP2 Sub	7.5 A
26		IGPS (LAF)	10 A
27	—	—	—
28	—	—	—
29	—	—	—
30		—	(30 A)
31		Starter DIAG	(7.5 A)
32	—	—	—
33	—	—	—

* Not available on all models

Thai models

Engine Compartment Fuse Box (Type B)

Located in the back of the engine compartment on the left side.
Push the tabs to open the box.



Fuse locations are shown on the fuse box cover.

Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and box cover mark.

■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

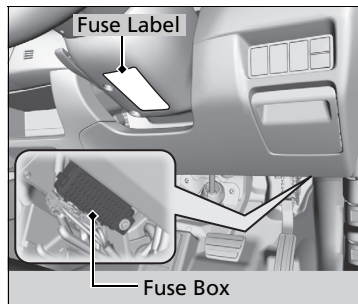
		Circuit Protected	Amps
1	—	—	—
2		EOP	(20 A)
3		Hazard	10 A
4	—	—	—
5		Wiper	30 A
6		Stop	10 A
7		IGP	20 A
8		IG Coil	15 A
9	—	—	—
10	—	—	—
11		ABS/VSA MTR	40 A
12		Main Fan	30 A
13		ST Magnetic SW	30 A
14		MG Clutch	7.5 A
15		Back Up FI-ECU	10 A
16		TCU	(10 A)
17		Engine Water Pump	10 A
18		Horn	10 A
19		Front Fog Light*	(10 A)
20		IGP2	15 A

		Circuit Protected	Amps
21		Back Up	10 A
22	—	—	—
23		Sub Fan	30 A
24		ABS/VSA FSR	30 A
25		Starter DIAG	7.5 A
26	—	—	—
27	—	—	—
28	—	—	—
29		Back Up 2	(30 A)
30	—	—	—
31		IGP2 Sub	7.5 A
32	—	—	—
33	—	—	—

■ Driver's Side Interior Fuse Box A

Models with interior fuse box label

Located under the dashboard.



Fuse locations are shown on the label. Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and label number.











■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

		Circuit Protected	Amps
1		Accessory	7.5 A
2		Accessory Key Lock	7.5 A
3		–	(10 A)
4		Ethanol Sensor*2	(7.5 A)
5		Option	10 A
6		Option2	10 A
7		Meter	10 A
8		Fuel Pump	15 A
9		A/C	10 A
10		Rear Accessory Socket	(20 A)
11		Mon	5 A
12		Right Side Door Lock	10 A
13		Left Side Door Unlock	10 A
14		Rear Left Power Window	20 A
15		Front Passenger's Power Window	20 A

		Circuit Protected	Amps
16		Door Lock	20 A
17		Transmission Control Unit	(10 A)
18		–	(10 A)
19		–	(20 A)
20		Starter Cut	7.5 A
21		ACG	(10 A)*1 (15 A)*2
22		Daytime Running Lights	7.5 A
23		–	(10 A)
24		Option	7.5 A
25		–	(10 A)
26		Right Side Door Unlock	10 A
27		Rear Right Power Window	20 A
28		Driver's Power Window	20 A
29		Front Accessory Socket	20 A

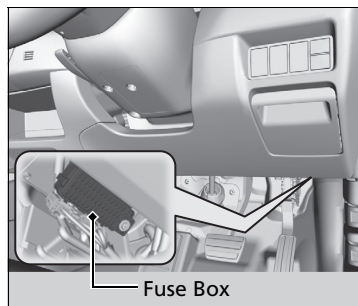
*1:Except Thai models

*2:Thai models

		Circuit Protected	Amps
30		Smart	(10 A)
31		–	(15 A)
32		–	(20 A)
33		–	(20 A)
34		ABS/VSA	10 A
35		SRS	10 A
36		–	(20 A)
37		IMG	(10 A)
38		Left Side Door Lock	10 A
39		–	(10 A)

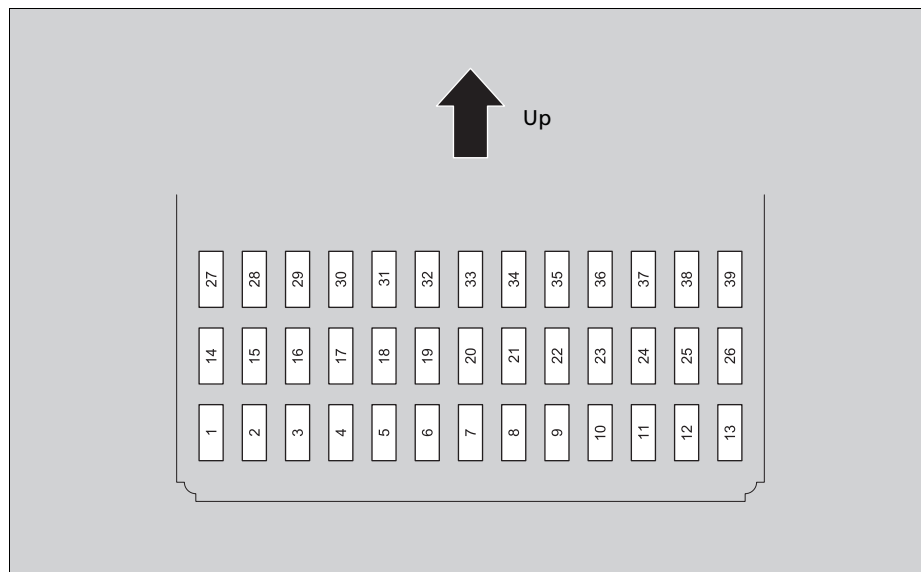
Models without interior fuse box label

Located under the dashboard.



Fuse locations are shown on the image below.

Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number in the image and chart.



■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

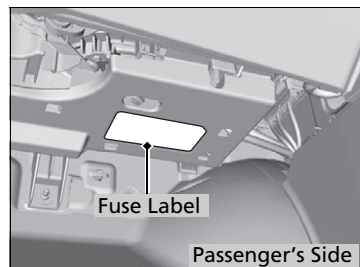
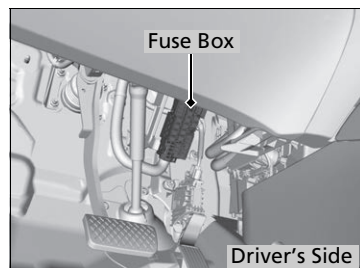
	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	Accessory	7.5 A
2	Accessory Key Lock	7.5 A
3	–	–
4	–	–
5	Option	10 A
6	Option2	10 A
7	Meter	10 A
8	Fuel Pump	15 A
9	A/C	10 A
10	–	–
11	Mon	5 A
12	Right Side Door Lock	10 A
13	Left Side Door Unlock	10 A
14	Rear Left Power Window	20 A
15	Front Passenger's Power Window	20 A
16	Door Lock	20 A
17	Transmission Control Unit	(10 A)
18	–	–
19	–	–
20	Starter Cut	7.5 A

	Circuit Protected	Amps
21	ACG	10 A
22	Daytime Running Lights	7.5 A
23	–	–
24	Option	7.5 A
25	–	–
26	Right Side Door Unlock	10 A
27	Rear Right Power Window	20 A
28	Driver's Power Window	20 A
29	Front Accessory Socket	20 A
30	Smart	10 A
31	–	–
32	–	–
33	–	–
34	ABS/VSA	10 A
35	SRS	10 A
36	–	–
37	IMG	10 A
38	Left Side Door Lock	10 A
39	–	–

Left-hand Drive Type

■ **Driver's Side Interior Fuse Box B**

Located under the dashboard.



Fuse locations are shown on the label.
Locate the fuse in question by the fuse
number and label number.

■ **Circuit protected and fuse rating**

		Circuit Protected	Amps
1		Fuse Box Main1*1	60 A
2		IG Main	30 A
3		IG Main 2	30 A
4		Relay Module1	30 A
5		Relay Module2	30 A
6		Fuse Box Main2	40 A
7		Fuse Box Option	(40 A)
8		—	—
9		Booster Motor	(40 A)
10		DC/DC 1	(30 A)
11		—	—
12		Heater Motor	30 A
13		Rear Demister	30 A
14		SRS	10 A
15		—	(10 A)

		Circuit Protected	Amps
16		—	(10 A)
17		—	(10 A)
18		ACC Socket (Console2)*	(20 A)
19		—	—
20		—	—
21		Washer	15 A
22		—	—
23		—	(15 A)
24		—	—
25		—	—

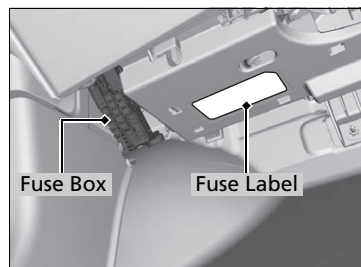
*1: Replacement of this fuses should be
done by a dealer.

* Not available on all models

■ Passenger's Side Interior Fuse Box A

Right-hand Drive Type with interior fuse box label

Located under the dashboard.



Fuse locations are shown on the label. Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and label number.

■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

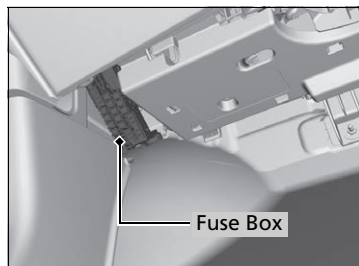
		Circuit Protected	Amps
1		Fuse Box Main1*1	60 A
2		IG Main	30 A
3		IG Main 2	30 A
4		Relay Module1	30 A
5		Relay Module2	30 A
6		Fuse Box Main2	40 A
7		Fuse Box Option	(40 A)
8		–	–
9		Booster Motor	(40 A)
10		DC/DC1	(30 A)
11		–	–
12		Heater Motor	30 A
13		Rear Demister	30 A
14		SRS	10 A
15		–	(10 A)

		Circuit Protected	Amps
16		–	(10 A)
17		–	(10 A)
18		ACC Socket (Console2)*	(20 A)
19		–	–
20		–	–
21		Washer	15 A
22		–	–
23		–	(15 A)
24		–	–
25		–	–

*1: Replacement of this fuses should be done by a dealer.

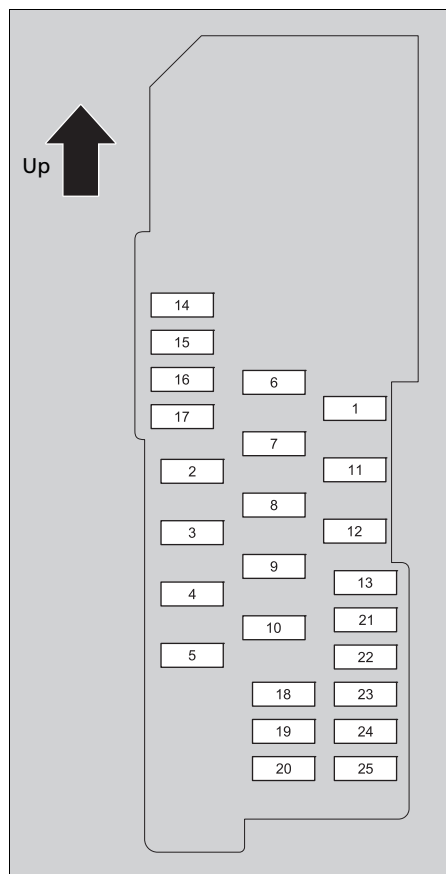
Right-hand Drive Type without interior fuse box label

Located under the dashboard.



Fuse locations are shown on the image below.

Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number in the image and chart.



■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	Fuse Box Main1* ¹	60 A
2	IG Main	30 A
3	IG Main 2	30 A
4	Relay Module1	30 A
5	Relay Module2	30 A
6	Fuse Box Main2	40 A
7	–	–
8	–	–
9	–	–
10	–	–
11	–	–
12	Heater Motor	30 A
13	Rear Demister	30 A
14	SRS	10 A
15	–	–

	Circuit Protected	Amps
16	–	–
17	–	–
18	–	–
19	Rear USB Charger*	(10 A)
20	–	–
21	Washer	15 A
22	–	–
23	–	–
24	–	–
25	–	–

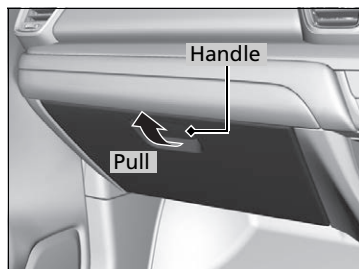
*1: Replacement of this fuses should be done by a dealer.

Thai models

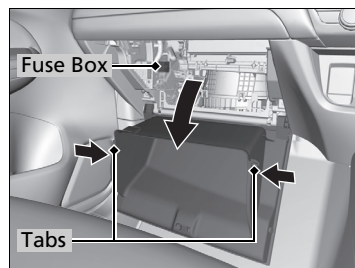
■ **Passenger's Side Interior Fuse Box B**

Located under the dashboard.

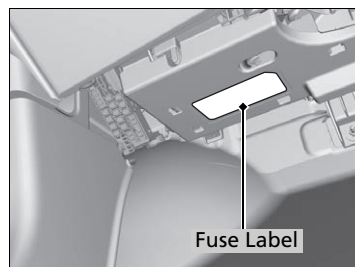
1. Open the glove box.



2. Disengage the two tabs by pushing on each side panel.
3. Pivot the glove box out of the way.



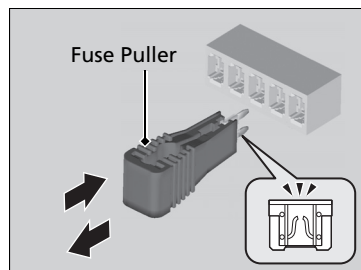
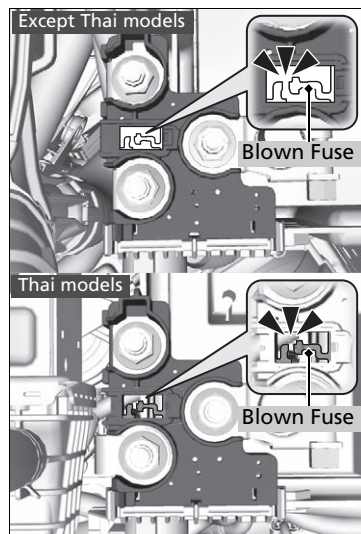
Fuse locations are shown on the label. Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and label number.



■ **Circuit protected and fuse rating**

		Circuit Protected	Amps
1		ACC Cut VST	(7.5 A)
2		—	—
3		VST IG1-1	(7.5 A)
4		Back Up 2 Main	(15 A)

Inspecting and Changing Fuses



1. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK). Turn headlights and all accessories off.
2. Remove the fuse box cover.
3. Check the large fuses in the engine compartment.
 - If the fuse is blown, have it replace by a dealer.

4. Inspect the small fuses in the engine compartment and the vehicle interior.
 - If there is a blown fuse, remove it with the fuse puller and replace it with a new one.
5. Inspect the small fuses in the vehicle interior.
 - If there is a burned out fuse, remove it with the fuse puller and replace it with a new one.

Inspecting and Changing Fuses

NOTICE

Replacing a fuse with one that has a higher rating greatly increases the chances of damaging the electrical system.

Use the charts to locate the fuse in question and confirm the specified amperage on the fuse label.

► Fuse Locations

P. 425, 427, 428, 429, 433, 434, 437

Replace with a fuse of the same specified amperage.

There is a fuse puller on the type B engine compartment fuse box cover.

Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.

■ Flatbed equipment

The operator loads your vehicle on the back of a truck.

This is the best way to transport your vehicle.

■ Wheel lift equipment

The tow truck uses two pivoting arms that go under the front tyres and lift them off the ground. The rear tyres remain on the ground. **This is an acceptable way to tow your vehicle.**

» Emergency Towing

NOTICE

Trying to lift or tow your vehicle by the bumpers will cause serious damage. The bumpers are not designed to support the vehicle's weight.

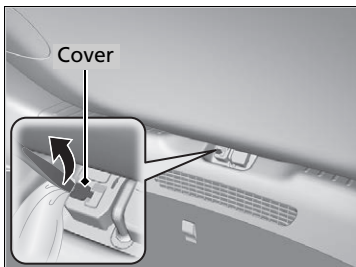
NOTICE

Improper towing such as towing behind a motorhome or other motor vehicle can damage the transmission.

Never tow your vehicle with just a rope or chain. It is very dangerous since ropes or chains may shift from side to side or break.

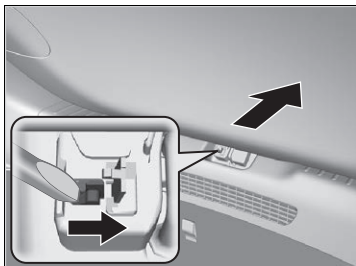
■ What to Do If Unable to Open the Tailgate

If you cannot open the tailgate, use the following procedure.



1. Use a flat-tip screwdriver and remove the cover on the back of the tailgate.

► Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



2. To open the tailgate, push the tailgate while sliding the lever to the right with the flat-tip screwdriver.

▣ What to Do If Unable to Open the Tailgate

When you open the tailgate from inside, make sure there is enough space around the tailgate, and it does not hit anyone or any object.

Following up:

After taking these steps, contact a dealer to have the vehicle checked.

Information

This chapter includes your vehicle's specifications, locations of identification numbers, and other information required by regulation.

Specifications	442
Identification Numbers	
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number and Transmission Number	445
Devices that Emit Radio Waves*	447
TCU Open Source Licence*	449

Vehicle Specifications

Model	CITY HATCHBACK		
Curb Weight	1,122-1,148 kg ^{*1}		
	1,126-1,143 kg ^{*2}		
	1,142-1,156 kg ^{*3}		
	1,161-1,187 kg ^{*4}		
Maximum Permissible Weight	1,600 kg		
Maximum Permissible Axle Weight	Front	900 kg ^{*4}	
		870 kg ^{*5}	
	Rear	715 kg ^{*4}	
		735 kg ^{*5}	

*1: Indonesian models

*2: Philippines and Laotian models

*3: Malaysian models

*4: Thai models

*5: Except Thai models

Engine Specifications

Type	Water-cooled in-line 3-cylinder DOHC ^{*1}	
	Water-cooled in-line 4-cylinder DOHC ^{*2}	
Bore x Stroke	73.0 x 78.7 mm ^{*1}	
	73.0 x 89.5 mm ^{*2}	
Displacement	988 cm ³ ^{*1}	
	1,498 cm ³ ^{*2}	
Compression Ratio	10.0 : 1 ^{*1}	
	10.6 : 1 ^{*2}	
Spark Plugs	NGK	ILZKAR8H8S ^{*1}
		DILZKAR7C11H ^{*2}
	DENSO	DXE22HCR11H ^{*2}

*1: Thai models

*2: Except Thai models

Fuel

Type	Unleaded premium petrol/gasohol up to E20 (80% petrol and 20% ethanol), Research octane number 95 or higher ^{*1}
	Unleaded petrol, research octane number 90 or higher ^{*2}
	Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher ^{*3}
Fuel Tank Capacity	40 L

*1: Thai models

*2: Indonesian models

*3: Except Thai and Indonesian models

Battery

Capacity	48AH(5)60AH(20) ^{*1}
	27AH(5)30AH(20) ^{*2}

*1: Thai models
 *2: Except Thai models
 Idle Stop:
 The battery installed in this vehicle is specifically designed for a model with Auto Idle Stop. If you need to replace the battery, make sure to select the specified type (LN2 EFB). Ask a dealer for more details.

Washer Fluid

Tank Capacity	1.8 L
---------------	-------

Light Bulbs

Headlights (Low Beam)	55 W (H7) ^{*1} LED ^{*2}
Headlights (High Beam)	60 W (HB3) ^{*1} LED ^{*2}
Fog Lights*	35 W (H8) ^{*3} LED ^{*4}
Front Turn Signal Lights	21 W (Amber) ^{*1} LED ^{*2}
Position/Daytime Running Lights	LED
Side Turn Signal Lights (on Front Fenders)*	5 W (Amber)
Side Turn Signal Lights (on Door Mirrors)*	LED
Brake Lights	LED
Brake/Taillights	LED
Taillights	LED
Rear Turn Signal Lights	21 W (Amber)
Back-Up Lights	16 W
High-Mount Brake Light	LED
Rear Licence Plate Light	LED
Interior Lights	Map Lights 8 W
	Ceiling Light 8 W
	Centre Pocket Light LED
	Luggage Area Light 5 W

*1: Models with halogen headlights

*2: Models with LED headlights

*3: Models without LED fog lights

*4: Models with LED fog lights

■ Air Conditioning

Refrigerant Type	HFC-134a (R-134a)
Charge Quantity	355 - 405 g ^{*1} 395 - 445 g ^{*2}

*1: Thai models

*2: Except Thai models

■ Brake/Clutch* Fluid

Specified	Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4
-----------	---------------------------------

■ Manual Transmission Fluid*

Specified	Honda MTF
Capacity	Change 1.4 L

■ Continuously Variable Transmission Fluid*

Specified	Honda HCF-2
Capacity	Change 2.8 L

■ Engine Oil

Recommended	Thai models	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> -Honda Genuine Motor Oil 0W-20, 0W-30, 5W-30 -ACEA A5/B5, API service SN or higher grade 0W-20, 0W-30, 5W-30 	
	Except Thai models	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> -Honda Engine OIL #1.0 -Honda Green OIL -Honda Genuine Motor Oil 0W-16, 0W-20, 5W-30 -ACEA A5/B5, API service SN or higher grade 0W-16, 0W-20, 5W-30 	
Capacity	Change	3.5 L ^{*1} 3.1 L ^{*2}
	Change including filter	3.8 L ^{*1} 3.3 L ^{*2}

*1: Thai models

*2: Except Thai models

■ Engine Coolant

Specified	Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2
Ratio	50/50 with distilled water
Capacity ^{*1}	3.53 L (change including the remaining 0.42 L in the reserve tank)
Capacity ^{*2}	3.67 L ^{*3} (change including the remaining 0.42 L in the reserve tank)
	3.98 L ^{*4} (change including the remaining 0.42 L in the reserve tank)
	5.19 L ^{*5} (change including the remaining 0.6 L in the reserve tank)

*1: Manual Transmission models

*2: Continuously Variable Transmission models

*3: Indonesian and Malaysian models

*4: Philippines and Laotian models

*5: Thai models

■ Tyre

Regular	Size ^{*1}	185/60R15 84H
		185/55R16 83V
		185/60R16 86H
		185/55R16 87H
Compact Spare ^{*2}	Pressure	See the label on driver's doorjamb
Spare ^{*3} (Full-size tyre)	Size	T135/80D15 99M
		T135/80D15 100M
		T135/90D15 100M
		See the label on driver's doorjamb
Wheel Size	Pressure	185/55R16 83V
		Same as the regular tyre.
		See the label on driver's doorjamb.
Regular	Size	15 x 6J ^{*4}
		16 x 6J ^{*5}
		15 x 4T
		16 x 6J

*1: Original tyre size is mentioned on the tyre information label on the driver's doorjamb.

*2: Except Indonesian models

*3: Indonesian models

*4: Models with 15 inch wheel

*5: Models with 16 inch wheel

■ Brake

Type	Power assisted
Front	Ventilated disc
Rear	Drum ^{*1, *2}
Parking	Solid disc ^{*3, *4}
	Mechanical

*1: Thai, Philippines and Laotian models

*2: Malaysian models with 15 inch wheel

*3: Indonesian models

*4: Malaysian models with 16 inch wheel

■ Vehicle Dimensions

Thai models

Length	4,350 mm ^{*1}
	4,369 mm ^{*2}
Width	1,748 mm
Height	1,488 mm ^{*1}
	1,501 mm ^{*2}
Wheelbase	2,589 mm
Track	Front 1,495 mm
	Rear 1,483 mm ^{*1}
	1,484 mm ^{*2}

*1: Models without fog lights

*2: Models with fog lights

Philippines and Laotian models

Length	4,350 mm ^{*1}
	4,369 mm ^{*2}
Width	1,748 mm
Height	1,488 mm
Wheelbase	2,600 mm
Track	Front 1,495 mm
	Rear 1,483 mm

*1: Models without LED fog lights

*2: Models with LED fog lights

Indonesian models

Length	4,369 mm
	1,748 mm
Width	1,748 mm
Height	1,488 mm
Wheelbase	2,600 mm
Track	Front 1,495 mm
	Rear 1,485 mm

Malaysian models

Length	4,350 mm ^{*1}
	4,369 mm ^{*2}
Width	1,748 mm
Height	1,488 mm
Wheelbase	2,591 mm ^{*1}
	2,590 mm ^{*2}
Track	Front 1,496 mm ^{*1}
	1,497 mm ^{*2}
	Rear 1,483 mm ^{*1}
	1,485 mm ^{*2}

*1: Models with A-type meter

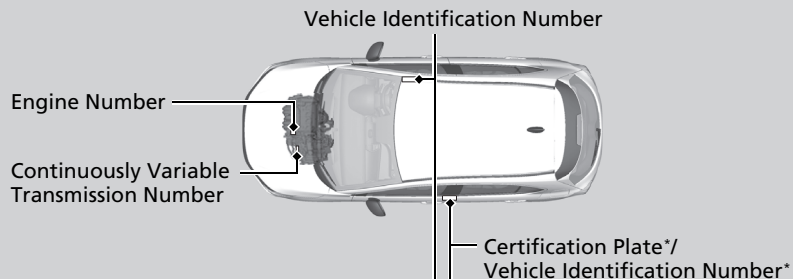
*2: Models with B-type meter

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number and Transmission Number

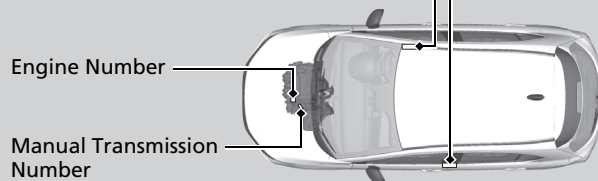
Your vehicle has a 17-digit vehicle identification number (VIN) used to register your vehicle for warranty purposes, and for licensing and insuring your vehicle. The locations of your vehicle's VIN, engine number and transmission number are shown as follows.

Except Thai models

Continuously Variable Transmission models

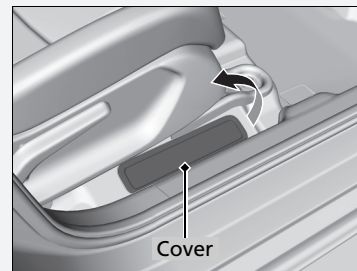


Manual Transmission models



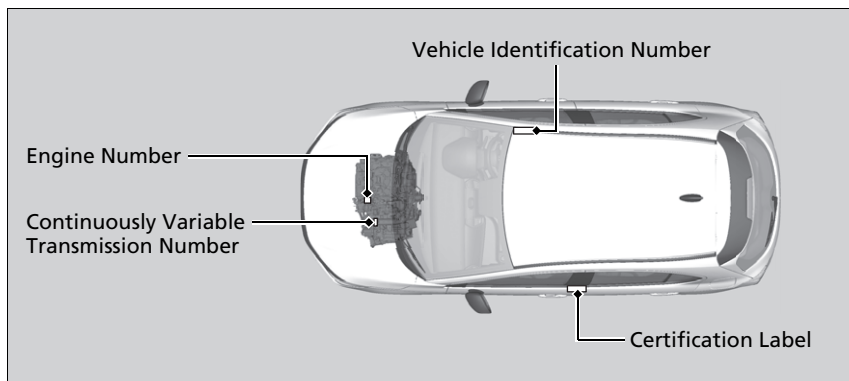
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number and Transmission Number

The interior vehicle identification number (VIN) is located under the cover.



* Not available on all models

Thai models



Devices that Emit Radio Waves*

The following products and systems on your vehicle emit radio waves when in operation.

Thai models

TCU*

This telecommunication equipment conforms to Technical Standard or Technical Requirement of National Broadcasting and Telecommunications Commission (NBTC).

Safety Criteria and Measures for the Use of Radiocommunication Equipment on Human Health.

This radiocommunication equipment has the electromagnetic field strength in compliance with the Safety Standard for the Use of Radiocommunication Equipment on Human Health announced by the National Telecommunications Commission.

Keyless Access System

เครื่อง โทรคมนาคมและอุปกรณ์นี้ มีความสอดคล้องตามข้อกำหนดของ กสทช

* Not available on all models

		BCM Keyless Access System	FOB Keyless Remote
Laotian models		https://www.sws.co.jp/en/product/document/certificate/HAR0004 	http://www.alps.com/products/common/pdf/HandUnit/TWB1G0090.pdf 
		<p>Hereby, Sumitomo Wiring Systems, Ltd. declares that the radio equipment type HAR0004 is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU.</p> <p>The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: https://www.sws.co.jp/en/product/document/certificate/HAR0004</p> <p>Intended use: Short range device for remote control</p> <p>Postal address: 1820, Nakanoike, Mikkaichi-cho, Suzuka, Mie 513-8631 JAPAN</p> <p>Frequency band(s) in which the radio equipment operates; 125kHz, 433.92MHz.</p> <p>Maximum radio-frequency power transmitted in the frequency band(s) in which the radio equipment operates; 107.2dBuV/m@10m.</p> <p>Importer Name: Honda Motor Europe Ltd - Aalst Office</p> <p>Postal address: Wijngaardveld 1 (Noord V) 9300 Aalst - Belgium</p>	<p>Hereby, ALPSALPINE CO., LTD. declares that the radio equipment type TWB1G0090 is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU.</p> <p>The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: http://www.alps.com/products/common/pdf/HandUnit/TWB1G0090.pdf</p> <p>Intended use: Short range device for remote control</p> <p>Postal address: 6-3-36, Nakazato, Furukawa, Osaki-city, Miyagi-pref., JAPAN 989-6181</p> <p>Frequency band(s) in which the radio equipment operates; 433.92MHz.</p> <p>Maximum radio-frequency power transmitted in the frequency band(s) in which the radio equipment operates; 80.8dBuV/m@3m.</p> <p>Importer Name: Honda Motor Europe Ltd - Aalst Office</p> <p>Postal address: Wijngaardveld 1 (Noord V) 9300 Aalst - Belgium</p>

Free/Open Source Software Information

This product contains Free/Open Source Software(FOSS).

The licence information and/or the source code of such FOSS can be found at the following URL.

<https://www.denso.com/global/en/opensource/tcu/honda/>

Numbers

7-Speed Manual Shift Mode 234

A

ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)..... 314

Accessories and Modifications..... 397

Accessory Power Sockets..... 204

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)..... 273

Adding

Coolant..... 353, 355

Engine Oil..... 352

Washer..... 360

Additives, Engine Oil..... 348, 350

Adjusting

Armrest..... 195

Front Seats..... 183

Head Restraints..... 192

Headlights..... 171

Mirrors..... 181

Steering Wheel..... 180

Temperature..... 101

Agile Handling Assist..... 248

Air Conditioning System (Climate Control System)..... 209

Changing the Mode..... 209

Defrosting the Windscreen and

Windows..... 211

Dust and Pollen Filter..... 389

Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode..... 209, 210

Sensors..... 213

Using Automatic Climate Control..... 209

Air Conditioning System (Cooling System)..... 206

Cooling..... 207

Defrosting the Windscreen and

Windows..... 208

Dust and Pollen Filter..... 389

Air Pressure..... 444

Airbags..... 47

After a Collision..... 50

Airbag Care..... 56

Event Data Recorder..... 1

Front Airbags (SRS)..... 49

Indicator..... 55, 90

Sensors..... 47

Side Airbag..... 52

Side Curtain Airbag..... 54

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)..... 314

Indicator..... 90

Armrest..... 195

Auto Door Locking/Unlocking..... 156

Auto High-Beam..... 172

Auto Idle Stop..... 240

Average Fuel Economy..... 105, 127

Average Speed..... 107, 129

B

Battery..... 384

Charging System Indicator..... 87, 423

If the Battery Is Dead..... 412

Maintenance (Checking the Battery)..... 384

Belts (Seat)..... 36

Beverage Holders..... 199

Booster Seats (For Children)..... 78

Brake System..... 312

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)..... 314

Brake Assist System..... 315

Fluid..... 358

Foot Brake..... 313

Indicator..... 86, 424

Parking Brake..... 312

Brightness Control (Instrument Panel) ... 178

Bulb Replacement..... 361

Back-Up Lights..... 370

Brake Lights..... 368

Ceiling Light..... 372

Fog Lights..... 366

Front Turn Signal Lights..... 365

Headlights..... 361

High-Mount Brake Light..... 371

Luggage Area Light..... 372

Map Lights..... 372

Position/Daytime Running Lights..... 365

Rear Licence Plate Lights..... 371

Rear Turn Signal Lights..... 368

Side Turn Signal Lights..... 367

Taillights..... 368, 370

Bulb Specifications..... 442

C

Carbon Monoxide Gas	80
Carrying Luggage	219, 220
Certification Label	445
Changing Bulbs	361
Charging System Indicator	87, 423
Child Restraint System	57
Booster Seats	78
Child Restraint System for Infants	61
Child Restraint System for Small Children ..	63
Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt	74
Larger Children	77
Rearward Facing Child Restraint System	61
Selecting a Child Restraint System	64
Using Tether	76
Child Safety	57
Childproof Door Locks	155
Cleaning the Exterior	394
Cleaning the Interior	391
Climate Control System	209
Changing the Mode	209
Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows	211
Dust and Pollen Filter	389
Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode	209, 210
Sensors	213
Using Automatic Climate Control	209
Clock	142
Clutch Fluid	358

CMBS (Collision Mitigation Braking

System)	252
Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)	252
Compact Spare Tyre	401, 444
Console Compartment	198
Continuously Variable Transmission	230
Creeping	230
Fluid	357
Kickdown	230
Operating the Shift Lever	231, 232
Shift Lever Does Not Move	416
Shifting	231
Controls	141
Coolant (Engine)	353, 355
Adding the Coolant	354, 356
Checking the Coolant	353, 355
Low Temperature Indicator	90
Overheating	417
Cooling System	206
Cooling	207
Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows	208
Dust and Pollen Filter	389
Creeping (Continuously Variable Transmission)	230
Cup Holders	199
Customize Display	109, 132
Customized Features	110

D

Daytime Running Lights	175
Dead Battery	412
Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows	208, 211
Devices that Emit Radio Waves	447
Dimming	
Headlights	167
Dipstick (Engine Oil)	350
Directional Signals (Turn Signals)	166
Door Mirrors	182
Doors	145
Auto Door Locking	156
Auto Door Unlocking	156
Door/Tailgate Open Message	35
Keys	145
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside	154
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside	147
Lockout Prevention System	153
Driver Information Interface	102, 123
Switching the Display	102
Driver's Pocket	201
Driver's Side Pocket	201
Driving	217
Braking	312
Continuously Variable Transmission	230
Shifting Gear	231, 236
Starting the Engine	222
Dust and Pollen Filter	389

E

Eco Assist System	11
ECON Mode.....	239
Elapsed Time.....	107, 129
Electric Power Steering (EPS) System	
Indicator.....	91, 424
Emergency.....	439
Emergency Stop Signal.....	316
Engine	
Coolant.....	353, 355
If the Battery Is Dead	412
Number.....	445
Oil.....	348
Starting	222
Engine Coolant.....	353, 355
Adding the Coolant.....	354, 356
Checking the Coolant.....	353, 355
Low Temperature Indicator	90
Overheating.....	417
Engine Oil.....	348
Adding	352
Checking	350
Engine Oil Pressure Low Warning.....	422
Recommended Engine Oil.....	348
Engine Oil Pressure Low Warning	422
ENGINE START/STOP Button	163
EPS (Electric Power Steering) System.....	91
Exhaust Hazard (Carbon Monoxide)	80
Exterior Care (Cleaning).....	394
Exterior Mirrors.....	182

F

Features	215
Filter	
Dust and Pollen.....	389
Flat Tyre	401
Floor Mats.....	392
Fluids	
Brake	358
Clutch	358
Continuously Variable Transmission	357
Engine Coolant	353, 355
Manual Transmission.....	357
Windscreen Washer	360
Fog Light Indicator	92
Foot Brake	313
Front Airbags (SRS).....	49
Front Seats	184
Adjusting	184
Front Wide View Camera.....	310
Fuel.....	23, 323
Average Fuel Economy	105, 127
Fuel Economy and CO ₂ Emissions	326
Gauge.....	100
Instant Fuel Economy	105, 127
Low Fuel Indicator	90
Range	105, 127
Recommendation	323
Refueling.....	323
Fuel Economy and CO ₂ Emissions	326
Fuel Fill Cap	23, 325
Fuel Fill Door	23, 325

Fuses	425
Inspecting and Changing	438
Locations ..	425, 427, 428, 429, 433, 434, 437

G

Gauges.....	100
Gear Shift Lever Positions	
Continuously Variable Transmission	231
Manual Transmission	236
Glass (care)	392, 395
Glove Box	198
G-Meter	130

H

Halogen Bulbs	361, 363, 366
Hazard Warning Button	4, 5
Head Restraints	192
Headlights	167
Adjuster.....	171
Aiming.....	361
Dimming.....	167
Operating	167
High-Beam Indicator.....	92
Honda Sensing	24, 249

I

Identification Numbers.....	445
Engine and Transmission.....	445
Vehicle Identification.....	445

Illumination Control	178
Immobilizer System	159
Indicator	93
Indicators	84
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) (Amber)	95
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) (White/ Green)	95
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)	90
Auto High-Beam	92
Auto Idle Stop (Green)	94
Auto Idle Stop System (Amber)	94
Brake System	87
Charging System	87
Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) (Amber)	96
Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) (Grey)	96
ECON Mode	94
Electric Power Steering (EPS) System	91
Engine Oil Pressure Low Warning	422
Fog Light	92
High-Beam	92
Immobilizer System	93
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) (Amber)	96
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) (White/ Green)	96
Lights On	92
Low Fuel (Amber)	90
Low Temperature (Blue)	90

M (7-speed manual shift mode) Indicator/ Shift	88
Malfunction Indicator Lamp	87
Parking Brake and Brake System	86
Road Departure Mitigation (Amber)	97
Road Departure Mitigation (Grey)	97
Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF	97
Safety Support (Amber)	98, 99
Safety Support (Green/Grey)	99
Seat Belt Reminder	89
Security System Alarm	93
Shift Down	88
Shift Position	88
Shift Up	88
Supplemental Restraint System	90
System Message	94
Transmission System	88
Turn Signal and Hazard Warning	92
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF	91, 247
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System	91
Instant Fuel Economy	105, 127
Instrument Panel	83
Brightness Control	178
Interior Lights	196
Interior Rearview Mirror	181

J

Jack (Wheel Nut Wrench)	405
Jump Starting	412

K

Key Number Tag	146
Keys	145
Lockout Prevention	153
Number Tag	146
Rear Door Won't Open	155
Remote Transmitter	147
Types and Functions	145
Kickdown (Continuously Variable Transmission)	230

L

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)	291
Lead Car Departure Notification System	304
Light Switches	167
Lights	167, 361
Bulb Replacement	361
Daytime Running Lights	175
Fog Lights	170
High-Beam Indicator Light	92
Interior	196
Lights On Indicator	92
Turn Signals	166
Load Limits	220

Locking/Unlocking	145
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking	156
Childproof Door Locks	155
From Inside	154
From Outside	147
Keys	145
Using a Key	152
Lockout Prevention System	153
Low Battery Charge	423
Low Fuel Indicator	90
Lower Anchorages	70
Lubricant Specifications Chart	443
Luggage (Load Limit)	220
Luggage Area Cover	203
Luggage Floor Box	202
Luggage Hooks	201

M

Maintenance	329
Battery	384
Brake Fluid	358
Cleaning	391
Climate Control	389
Clutch Fluid	358
Coolant	353, 355
Cooling System	389
Oil	350
Oil Monitor System	333
Precautions	330
Radiator	354

Remote Transmitter	387
Replacing Light Bulbs	361
Safety	331
Transmission Fluid	357
Tyres	377
Under the Bonnet	345
Maintenance Schedule	338
Malfunction Indicator Lamp	87, 423
Manual Transmission	236
Map Lights	197
Maximum Permissible Weight	220
Meters, Gauges	100
Mirrors	181
Adjusting	181
Door	182
Exterior	182
Interior Rear View	181
Modifications (and Accessories)	397

N

Numbers (Identification)	445
---------------------------------------	-----

O

Oil (Engine)	348
Adding	352
Checking	350
Engine Oil Pressure Low Warning	422
Recommended Engine Oil	348
Viscosity	348

Oil Monitor System	333
Opening/Closing	
Bonnet	347
Power Windows	161
Tailgate	157
Outside Temperature	101
Adjusting	101
Overheating	417

P

Parking Brake	312
Parking Brake and Brake System	
Indicator	86, 424
Parking Sensor System	319
Passing Indicators	167
Petrol	23, 323
Fuel Economy and CO ₂ Emissions	326
Gauge	100
Information	323
Instant Fuel Economy	105
Low Fuel Indicator	90
Refueling	323
Precautions While Driving	229
Rain	229
Pregnant Women	44
Puncture (Tyre)	401

R

Radiator	354
-----------------------	-----

Range	105, 127
Rear Demister Button	179
Rear Seats	186
Refueling	323
Fuel Gauge.....	100
Low Fuel Indicator.....	90
Petrol.....	323, 442
Remote Engine Start	224
Remote Transmitter	147
Replacement	
Battery.....	384
Bulbs.....	361
Fuses.....	425, 427, 428, 429
Tyres.....	401
Wiper Blade Rubber.....	373, 375
Resetting a Trip Meter	105, 127
Road Departure Mitigation	265
On and Off.....	269

S

Safe Driving	31
Safety Check	35
Safety Labels	81
Safety Message	0
Safety Support	108, 131
Seat Belts	36
Checking.....	45
Fastening.....	41
Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt.....	74

Pregnant Women.....	44
Reminder.....	38
Warning Indicator.....	38, 89
Seats	183
Adjusting.....	183
Front Seats.....	184
Rear Seat Reminder.....	189
Rear Seats.....	186
Security System	159
Immobilizer System Indicator.....	93
Security System Alarm Indicator.....	93
Selecting a Child Restraint System	64
Setting the Clock	142
Settings	110, 133
Shift Lever	231, 236
Operation.....	231, 236
Releasing.....	416
Shift Lever Position Indicator.....	232
Won't Move.....	416
Shift Up/Down Indicators	237
Shifting (Transmission)	231, 236
Side Airbags	52
Side Curtain Airbag	54
Spare Tyre	401, 444
Spark Plugs	442
Specifications	442
Specified Fuel	323
Speedometer	100
SRS Airbags (Airbags)	49
Starting the Engine	222
Does Not Start.....	409

If the Battery Is Dead.....	412
Steering Wheel	180
Adjusting.....	180
Stopping	317
Supplemental Restraint System (SRS)	49
Switches (Around the Steering Wheel)	4, 6, 163

T

Tachometer	100
Tailgate	157
Unable to Open.....	440
TCU Open Source Licence	449
Temperature	
Low Temperature Indicator.....	90
Outside Temperature Display.....	101
Temperature Sensor	101, 213
Time (Setting)	142
Tools	400
Towing a Trailer	221
Towing Your Vehicle	
Emergency.....	439
Transmission	231, 236
Continuously Variable Transmission.....	231
Fluid.....	357
Manual.....	236
Number.....	445
Shift Position Indicator.....	88, 232
Trip Meter	105, 127

Troubleshooting	399
Blown	
Fuse.....	425, 427, 428, 429, 433, 434, 437
Brake Pedal Vibrates	27
Buzzer Sounds When Opening Door	29
Emergency Towing	439
Engine Won't Start	409
Noise When Braking	29
Overheating.....	417
Puncture/Flat Tyre	401
Rear Door Won't Open	28
Shift Lever Won't Move	416
Warning Indicators	84
Turbo Engine Vehicle	327
Turn signals	166
Indicators (Instrument Panel).....	92
Tyres	377
Air Pressure	444
Checking and Maintaining.....	377
Inspection.....	378
Puncture (Flat Tyre).....	401
Rotation	381
Spare Tyre	401, 444
Tyre Chains.....	382
Wear Indicators	379
Winter.....	382

U

Unlocking the Doors.....	147
--------------------------	-----

Unlocking the Driver's Doors from the Inside.....	154
USB Ports	205

V

Vanity Mirrors	9
Vehicle Identification Numbers	445
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA)	246
Off Button.....	247
OFF Indicator	91
System Indicator	91
Ventilation	206, 209
Viscosity (Oil)	348, 443
VSA (Vehicle Stability Assist)	246

W

Warning Indicator On/Blinking	422
Warning Labels	81
Warnings	109
Watts	442
Wear Indicators (Tyre)	379
Wheel Nut Wrench (Jack Handle)	405
Window Washers	
Adding/Refilling Fluid	360
Switch	176
Windows (Opening and Closing)	161
Windscreen	
Cleaning	392, 395
Defrosting/Defogging.....	208, 211

Washer Fluid	360
Wiper Blades.....	373
Wipers and Washers	176
Winter Tyres	382
Tyre Chains.....	382
Wipers and Washers	176
Checking and Replacing Front Blades.....	373
Checking and Replacing Rear Blades	375
Rear	177
Worn Tyres	377